بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

The new

OK. 2022

من أجلـــــكم تعلــمنا ولكم ما تعلـــــمنا

First Year

الصف الاول الثانوي

ترم ثانى

الاسم/ ....

العنوان/..

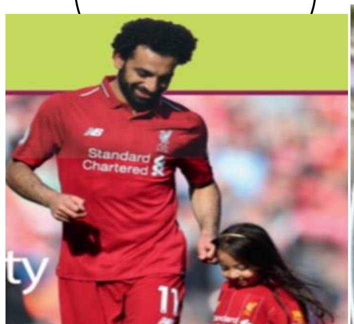
الامنية/..

كيفية التحقيق/ ....

فى حالة فقدان الكتيب برجاء الاتصال بـ/.................................

رقم الطالب







Unit 7

Health and safety

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
allergy (n)	حساسية	at least	علي الأقل	bacteria (n)	بكتيريا (جمع)
breathe (v)	يتنفس	bacterium (n)	بكتيريا (مفرد)	bin (n)	سلة مهملات
bedding (n)	الفراش	evacuate (v)	يخلي	burn (n) / (v)	حرق / يحرق يحترق
danger (n)	خطر	CPR	الإنعاش القلبي (التنفس الصناعي)	grow (v)	ينمو
dust (n)	تراب / غبار	first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	emergency services	خدمات(موظفي) الطوارئ
research (n)	بحث	hygiene (n	النظافة الشخصية	wrap (v)	يلف / يغلف
immediately	علي الفور	blanket (n)	بطانية	soil (n)	زراعية تربة
a good idea (n)	فكرة جيدة	question (v) / n)	يسأل / سؤال	advice (n)	نصيحة
wash (v)	يغسل	articles (n)	مقالات	blog posts	مشاركات
available (adj)	متاح	millions (n)	ملايين	basic (adj)	أساسي
show/showed/shown	يعرض	check (v)	يفحص	hands (n)	أيدي
describe (v)	يصف	dangerous (adj)	خطير	hurt (v)	يؤذي
nearby	بالقرب من	interpret (v)	يفسر / يترجم	information (n)	معلومات
kill (v)	يقتل	call (v)	ينادي / يتصل	links (n)	روابط
true (adj)	حقيقي	medical help (n)	مساعدة طبية	wear (v)	يرتدي
nurse (n)	ممرضة	a bad idea (n)	فكرة سيئة	online (adj)	متصل بالانترنت
correct (adj)	صحيح	phrase (n)	عبارة	trousers (n)	بنطلون
possibility (n)	إمكانية	do CPR	يقوم بعمل إنعاش قلبي للمريض	quickly (adv)	بسرعة
grow quickly	ينمو بسرعة	report (n)	تقرير	subject (n)	موضوع
scientific research (n)	بحث علمي	agree (v)	يوافق	scientists (n)	علماء
become (v)	يصبح	toilet (n)	حمام	as often as	بقدر / علي قدر
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد	surprising (adj)	مُدهش	websites (n)	مواقع إلكترونية
a healthy life (n)	حياة صحية	bottoms (n	قيعان(نعل الحذاء)	shoes (n)	حذاء
carry (v)	يحمل	bathroom (n)	حمام	clean (adj)	نظيف
kitchen floor (n	أرضية المطبخ	food (n)	طعام	soapy water (n)	الماء بالصابون
drinks (n)	مشروبات	remove (v)	يزيل	spend (v)	يقضي
asleep (adj)	نائم	pets (n	حيوانات أليفة(منزلية)	contact (v)	يتواصل مع
gloves (n)	قفازات	gardening (n)	العمل في الحديقة	food waste (n)	فضلات الطعام
separate (adj)	منفصل	offer (v) / (n)	يعرض / عرض	touch (v)	يلمس
suggestion (n)	اقتراح	green (adj)	لا يصلح للأكل	rule (n)	قاعدة
windows (n)	شبابيك / نوافذ	law (n) (n)	قانون	bookshelf (n)	رف الكتب
bedroom (n)	غرفة نوم	library (n)	مكتبة	drop (v)	يُسقط
outside (adv)	بالخارج	cheese (n)	جبن	dirty (adj)	قذر
flat (n)	شقة	respond	يستجيب لـ	trust	يثق بـ
receive (v)	يستقبل / يستلم	neighbors (n)	جيران	helpful (adj)	متعاون
well (adj)	معافي	ideas (n)	أفكار	full (adj)	ممتلئ
email (n)	بريد الكتروني	back (n)	ظهر	remember	يتذكر
come up to (v)	يأتي إلي	sponge	يمسح	messy (adj)	فوضوي

jobs (n) وظائف	around حول	necessary ضروري
happen (v) يحدث	without بدون	a fire (n) حريق
waiting (n) انتظار	leave a place يترك المكان	warm (adj) دافئ
cloth (n) قماش	cover (v) يغطي	paper (n) ورق
stay calm يبقي هادي	close (v) يغلق	smoke يدخن / دخان
injured people ناس مصابين	discuss (v) يناقش	actions (n) أحداث
powder (n) مسحوق	dirt (n) قذارة / تراب	furniture (n) أثاث
container (n) حاوية	medical condition حالة طبية	become ill يصبح مريض
painful (adj) مؤلم	substance (n) مادة	particular (adj) خاص
living things (n) الكائنات الحية	cause diseases يسبب الأمراض	layer (n) طبقة
earth (n) الأرض	deep cuts (n) جروح عميقة	chopping boards (n) ألواح التقطيع
properly (adv) بشكل مناسب	phones (n) هواتف	tablets (n) أجهزة لوحية
computer keyboard لوحة مفاتيح الكمبيوتر	warm, wet places (n) الأماكن الدافئة والرطبة	kitchen sponge (n) اسفنجة المطبخ
experts (n) خبراء	regularly (adv) بانتظام	tissue (n) منديل / نسيج
sneeze (v) يعطس	spread (v) ينشر	plastic (n) بلاستيك
extra (adj) إضافي	replace (v) يستبدل	cleaners (n) عمال النظافة
special (adj) خاص / مميز/	inside في الداخل	sunlight (n) ضوء الشمس
shower (n) دش الاستحمام	mouth (n) فم	cough (v) يكح
the same نفس الشئ	prepare (v) يعد / يجهز	soap (n) صابون
explain (v) يشرح	frequently في كثير من الاحيان	drive (v) يقود السيارة
tired (adj) متعب	realise (v) تدرك	parents (n) الوالدين
make sure (v) يتأكد	pressure (n) ضغط	blood (n) دم
helmet (n) خوذة	plaster ضمادة / لزق مسكن للألأم	hygienist (n) أخصائي صحة
hygienic (adj) صحي	unhygienic (adj) غير صحي	sheet (n) ملاية
soil تربة /يمسح فى التراب	Fire نار/يطرد	bit جزء /كسرة
board يصعد طائرة اوسفينة	breed سلالة	bed سرير/قاع

Definitions

at least على الأقل	not less than a particular number or amount	لا تقل عن رقم معين أو مبلغ معين
bacteria (n) بكتيريا) اسم جمع)	very small living things that cause diseases	الكائنات الحية الصغيرة جدا التي تسبب الأمراض
bedding (n) الفراش	sheets, covers etc. that you put on a bed	ملاءات وأغطية إلخ تضعها على السرير
research (n) بحث	studying something to find new facts about it	دراسة شيء للعثور على حقائق جديدة حول هذا الموضوع
respond (v) رد	doing something when someone talks to you	فعل شيئًا عندما يتحدث إليك شخص ما
bin (n) سلة مهملات	a container for putting waste in	حاوية لوضع النفايات فيها
blanket (n) بطانية	a warm cover on a bed	غطاء دافئ على السرير
breathe (v) يتنفس	taking air in and out of your body	أخذ الهواء داخل وخارج الجسم
burn (n) حرق	damage to the body caused by fire or heat	الأضرار التي لحقت الجسم بسبب النار أو الحرارة

danger (n)	خطر	the possibility of being hurt or killed	إمكانية التعرض للأذى أو القتل

emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ	people who come to help you quickly	الناس الذين يأتون لمساعدتك بسرعة
evacuate (v)	يخلي	leave a place because it is not safe	أن تترك مكانًا لأنه غير آم
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	basic medical help given quickly	المساعدة الطبية الأساسية المقدمة بسرعة
grow (v)	ينمو	to increase in amount, size, number, or strength	يزداد في الكمية أو الحجم أو العدد أو القوة
hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية	keeping yourself and the things around you clean	الحفاظ على نفسك والأشياء من حولك نظيفة
immediately	علي الفور	very quickly, without waiting	بسرعة كبيرة ، دون انتظار
soil (n)	تربة زراعية	the top layer of the earth in which plants grow	الطبقة العليا من الأرض التي تنمو فيها النباتات
wrap (v)	يغلف / يلف	cover something with cloth or paper	تغطية شيء بقطعة قماش أو ورقة

allergy (n)	حساسية	a medical condition in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful because you have eaten or touched a particular substance	حالة طبية تصاب فيها بالمرض أو تصبح بشرتك حمراء ومؤلمة لأنك أكلت أو لمست مادة معينة
dust (n)	غبار / تراب	dry powder consisting of extremely small bits of dirt that is in buildings on furniture, floors etc if they are not kept clean	مسحوق جاف يتكون من أجزاء صغيرة جدًا من الأوساخ الموجودة في المباني على والأرضيات وما إلى ذلك إذا لم يتم تنظيفها الأثاث
CPR Cardiopulmonary resuscitation	تنفس صناعي	something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body	شيء تفعله لمساعدة شخص ما على يأخذ الهواء داخل وخارج جسمه

Antonyms

healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
trust	يثق	doubt	يشك
at least	على الاقل	at most	على الاكثر
take off	يخلع	put on /wear	يرتدى
full	مليء	empty	فارغ
available	متاح	unavailable	غير متاح
mild	معتدل	serious/severe	خطير/شديد

Prepositions

take in	يمتص	shout at	يصيح في

talk to	يتحدث إلي	move … away from	ينقل ..... بعيدا عن
a pair of	زوج من	know about	يعرف عن
belong to	ينتمي الي	look at	ينظر الي
on a website	علي موقع الكتروني	at home	في البيت
take off	يخلع ملابس	at the door	عند الباب
come back	يعود	fall on	يسقط علي
in bed	في السرير	live in	يعيش في
spend time with	يقضي وقت مع(أشخاص)	contact with	اتصال مع
good at	جيد في	ask about	يسأل عن
think of	يفكر في	receive from	يستلم من
ask for some advice	يطلب بعض النصائح	go out	يخرج
complain about	يشكو من	in my opinion	في رأي الشخصي
a building on fire	مبني مشتعل	do/cause damage to	تسبب الضرر ل
on a bed	علي السرير	cover with	يغطي ب
in a fire	في النار	increase in	يزداد في / زيادة في
find …… about	يجد ..... عن	full of	ممتلئ ب
a home for bacteria	موطن للبكتريا	travel around	يسافر حول
return from	يعود من	at the beach	عند الشاطئ
in the morning	في الصباح	at the weekend	في نهاية الاسبوع
decide on	يختار / يحدد	Clean up	ينظف

Expressions

find other research on the same topic.	يحاول أن يجد أبحاث أخري في نفس الموضوع	go into someone's house	يدخل منزل شخص
make it harder	يجعلها أصعب	cause skin problems	تسبب مشاكل الجلد
as often as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع	change your bedding	تغيير الفراش الخاص بك
busy on Sunday afternoons	مشغول بعد الظهر في أيام الأحد	help your friend with this problem	يساعد صديقك في هذه المشكلة
warm, soapy water	ماء صابون ساخن	once every two weeks	مرة كل اسبوعين
protect you against allergies	يحميك ضد الحساسية	leave your bins outside	اترك صناديق القمامة في الخارج
stay clean in the garden	ابقي نظيفا في الحديقة	wash the kitchen floor	يغسل أرضية المطبخ
contain bacteria	يحتوي علي البكتيريا	keep your bins clean	حافظ على نظافة صناديق القمامة
carry bacteria	يحمل البكتيريا	leave your bin open	يترك صندوق القمامة مفتوح
remove bacteria	يزيل / يمحو البكتيريا	anything else	أي شيء أخر
follow rules	يتبع التعليمات	break rules	يخالف القواعد
follow DOs and DON'Ts	يتبع الأوامر و النواهي	evacuate the building quickly	إخلاء المبنى بسرعة
back hurting	ألم الظهر	have an accident	تعرض لحادث
keep a person still	يبقي الشخص ساكن لا يتحرك	break his arm	يكسر زراعه
cut his leg	يجرح رجله	burn his hand	يحرق يديه
feel clean	يبدو نظيفا	working in the garden	يعمل في الحديقة
have an argument with	لديك مناقشة مع	get angry	يغضب
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	say sorry	يتأسف
once a week	مرة في الاسبوع	strange smell	رائحة غريبة
Take your shoes off	اخلع الحذاء عند الباب	He was badly injured	لقد جرح جرحا سيئا

at the door	
complain about her back hurting تشكو من ظهرها الذي يؤلمها	Don't shout at him لا تصرخ في وجهه
touch my heart يسعد قلبي	wrap his arm around me يحتضني في سعادة

Language Notes

1- grow / grow up

grow	ينمو – يزرع للنبات/ يزداد	grow up	يكبر للانسان والحيوان
was born	ولد	bring up	يربي

- -In the last 3 years. Seif has (grown- grown up) taller by 15 centimeters.
  هنا في الجملة المطلوب يزداد وليس يكبر في العمر
- -When I (grow- grow up) I want to be a doctor.
- -She (brought up- was born) in Delengate.

2- agree/accept

agree	يوافق ولا يأتي بعدها مفعول الا اذا كان بعدها حرف جر
accept	يقبل ويأتي بعدها مفعول مباشرة دون حرف جر

accept an offer	يقبل عرض	accept a bribe	رشوة
accept proposal	يقبل عرض زواج	accept help	يقبل المساعدة
agree with	يتفق مع شخص	agree with opinion /idea	يوافق علي فكرة/ رأي
agree on/ about	يوافق علي شئ	agree to +inf	يوافق ان

- -He (accepted- agreed) the offer yesterday.
- -He (accepted- agreed) with my opinion.
- -She agreed(to- with) join us.

3- Hygiene / Sanitation / Cleanliness

hygiene	نظافة شخصية	sanitation	نظافة عامة
cleanliness	النظافة عموما	hygienist	اخصائي الصحة
hygienic	معقم/ نظيف		

- -You must look after yourself, it's the first rule of (sanitation- hygiene)
- -We must do the operation in (hygienic- hygienist) place

4- contact

in contact with	علي اتصال ب	contact with	اتصال ب
connect	يوصل	contact	يتصل ب
communicate with	يتصل ب		

- -If there is a problem (connect- contact) me
- -He is always in (connect- contact)with his friends.

5- response

responsive to	مستجيب لـ	in response to	ردا علي
get / receive response	يتلقي رد	positive/negative response	استجابة ايجابية/سلبية

- -The body is not (response- responsive) to the medicine.
- -His body (responsive- responded) well to the medicine.
- -He wrote to the company in (response- responsive) to their advertisement.

6- wrap

wrap (v)	يغطي/يغلف	wrap/ wrapper/ wrapping	غطاء للتغليف
keep something under wraps	يبقي...سرا	take the wraps off something	يفشي...سرا

- -He took the wraps (of- off) his new project and all people knew about it.
- -He kept the plan (over- under) wraps, he didn't want anyone to know.

7- research

research (n-v)	بحث علمي – عمليه البحث	research (v)	يجري بحث علمي
do research on- into	يجري بحث علمي	search	بحث- تفتيش

- -Scientists (research- search) new diseases.
- -He wants to (make- do) research on the new vaccine.

8- A pair

shorts - gloves- shoes- trousers- pants- panties- socks+فعل جمع
لأنها أشياء مكونة من جزأين
A pair of (shorts/ gloves/ shoes/ trousers/ pants/ panties/ socks) + فعل مفرد
لان الفاعل هنا كلمة pair

- -My trousers (need – needs) to be cleaned.
- -A pair of socks (is – are) suitable for you.

9- make it + adj+ to + inf يجعل من ال.........ان+.......

- -Too much smoke makes it harder (breathe – to breathe)
- -Concentrating more makes it easy (to pass- pass) the test.

10- stop مفعول (from) +v-ing يمنع...أن

-I stopped him(in- from) speaking in the class.

☺هناك بعض الصفات لا يأتي بعدها اسم مثل:

alive- alone - asleep - afraid - ill - well

Which is correct

a- I saw some afraid people b- I saw some people afraid

Derivatives

allergy	حساسية	Allergic to	مصاب بالحساسية
allergen	مادة تثير الحساسية		

dust	غبار / تراب	dust	يزيل الاتربة
dusty	مترب	a speak / particle of dust	ذرة تراب

evacuate from/ to	يجلي	evacuation	اجلاء
responds to	يستجيب	response	استجابة

- -Mona has an (allergic- allergy) to fish.
- -Samy is (allergen- allergic) to milk.
- -Fish is one of Soha's (allergens – allergic)
- -the place is very (dust- dusty) we need to clean it up.
- -The government evacuated the poor families (from- to) their old houses

Don't get confused

health	صحة	healthy	سليم – صحي
bacteria	بكتريا (جمع)	bacterium	بكتريا (مفرد)
bury	يدفن	burn	يحرق /يحترق
evacuate	يجلي	excavate	ينقب
trust	يثق	rust	يصدأ

sigh	يتنهد	sneeze	يعطس
come out	يظهر	come up	يقترب
emergency	فوضى	emergent	طارىء
messy	فوضوى	mess	فوضى
resuscitate	ينعش	resuscitation	انعاش
cleaner	عامل نظافة	cleaner	منظف
advice	نصح (اسم) لا يعد	a piece of advice	نصيحة

1-We should have ……….food

a-health b-healthy c-hygienist d-hygiene

2-We have known that there are some ……….problems in China.

a-health b-healthy c-hygienist d-good

3-The bacteria……….killed by heating.

a-is b-was c-are d-has

4-Our bodies are designed to………..carbohydrates.

a-bury b-burn c-push d-dull

5-strong………..must be kept away from children.

a-diseases b-attractions c-cleaners d-houses

6-He gave me some………concerning study.

a-advice b-advises c-device d-advices

Reading 1

Hygiene at home: Seven DOs and DON'Ts for a healthy life

1. Take your shoes off

The *bottoms* of your shoes can carry more *bacteria* than your *bathroom* . You should always take your shoes off at the door.

2. No more dust

Dust quickly comes back again after you've cleaned. However, dust can make it harder to breathe and can cause skin problems . You should clean your house or flat as often as you can .

3. Wash the kitchen floor

Food and drinks can easily fall on the kitchen floor. You should clean your kitchen floor at least once a week. You should use warm , soapy water so you can remove all the bacteria.

4. Change your bedding

We spend a lot of our time *asleep in bed* . You should *change* your *bedding* at least once *every* two weeks so *bacteria can't* live in it.

5. Wash your hands after spending time with your pets

Research has shown that *contact with pets* early in life can protect you against *allergies* . But animals can also carry bacteria. If you touch your pet, you shouldn't touch *anything else* until you've washed your hands.

6. Stay clean in the garden

You should wear *gloves* if you're going to touch soil in the garden because it can contain bacteria. You should wash your hands when you've finished *gardening* too.

7. Don't forget to keep your bins clean

A lot of bacteria can grow in your ***bin*** . You shouldn't ***leave*** your bin ***open***.

Reading 2 Hygiene rules around the world

In the UK, → you must put your ***food waste*** in a ***separate*** bin.

- In Thailand, → you must ***take*** your shoes ***off*** before going into someone's house.

- In the USA, → you should ***offer*** to help ***clean up*** after dinner at a friend's house.

Dangerous Trousers!

Research has shown that you should only ***wear a pair of trousers*** for one day. ***Bacteria*** can ***grow*** quickly in your trousers, so it's a bad idea to wear them for more than one day.

Always wash your hands!

Research has shown that people who ***wash*** their ***hands*** every time they come home from ***outside*** don't become ***ill*** as often as people who don't.

Reading 3

To : (name)
Subject : Advice
Dear . . . . ,
How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some ***advice***. Do you remember my ***neighbour***, Mrs. Saki? She ***had an accident*** last year and now she doesn't ***go out*** much. It isn't easy for her to clean. I went to her flat yesterday and the bins were ***full***. The floor and kitchen were dirty, too. She ***complained about*** her ***back*** hurting and I think she ***needs help***, but I have a lot of exams coming up. What do you think I should do? I hope you can help me.
Best wishes, ...

Listening

Nurse: Today, I'm going to tell you what to do if you find a person who is ***lying*** on the ground and not moving. ***Call*** the ***emergency services*** immediately. Then you must check if there are any ***dangers*** near to the person, like ***electrical*** cables. If there are any dangers, ***move*** the person ***away*** from them. When you know they're safe, shout 'Hello!' or 'Wake up!' and see if the person ***responds***. If the person doesn't ***respond*** to you, put your face next to their face so you can check their ***breathing***. If the person isn't breathing, the emergency services will tell you how to do ***CPR*** so you can help the person start to breathe again.

Grammar

- **Necessity** الضرورة	
إثبات **in the present**	نفى
1- Must + inf 2- Have/ has to	- don't /doesn't have to + inf
3- need / s to + inf	- needn't + inf don't/doesn't need to + inf

- today is off work, so we (have to – **don't have to**) get up early.

- He (**must** – doesn't have to) do the homework.
- She (has to – **doesn't need to**) buy more clothes, she has already had a lot.
- He (must – **doesn't have to**) answer all questions as he can answer 5 from 6.

Choose the correct answer: practice1

1- You must…………..your mother with the housework.
a-help b-be helped c-to help d-helping
2- Your mother must………..with the housework.
a-help b-be helped c-to help d-helping
3- You ………go to the pyramids when you are in Giza. It's great.
a-mustn't b-must c-should d-shouldn't
4- A:You………..drink any coffee. It's not good for your weak heart. B:OK, doctor.
a-mustn't b-shouldn't c-must d-should
5- You…….lies, son!
a-shouldn't be telling b-mustn't tell c-should tell d-must tell
6- You ……..swim in that river. It's full of crocodiles.
a-must swim b-shouldn't be swum c-mustn't swim d-should swim
7- It is a really great book. You………..read it soon.
a-shouldn't b-mustn't c-must be d-should
8- A:Nada, you……..play in the street. B:Ok, mum
a-should b-must c-mustn't d-ought to
9- You……….talk so loudly in the school library.
a-must b-mustn't c-should d-shouldn't
10- You………..eat any food that smells bad.
a-must b-mustn't c-should d-shouldn't
11- You…….them yesterday. Now it's too late.
a-should call b-should have called c-shouldn't have called d-shouldn't call
12- You mustn't smoke in a petrol station.
a-it is a rule b-It is a personal obligation
c-It is a personal freedom d-It is advisable
13- You shouldn't have wasted your time, Reem. This means…….
a-Reem didn't waste her time b-Reem wasted her time
c-It is inadvisable for Reem to waste her time
d-It is advisable for Reem to waste her time.
14- The manager was angry. Ali should have come earlier this morning. This meansAli………
a-arrived earlier b-had to arrive earlier
c-didn't arrive earlier d-needn't have arrived earlier
15- ……..wash the car. The man at the garage will wash it tomorrow.
a-mustn't b-can't c-might not d-needn't
16- you ………… be 18 to drive a car in England
a-might b)need c-have to d-ought to
17- we ...hurry. it only takes ten minutes to the station and we have an hour before the train goes.
a-mustn't b-can't c-might not d-don't have to
18- Tarek …… get the bus to the park. My father can take him in our car
a-mustn't b-needn't to c-doesn't have to d-have to
19- At an airport, what do you ….. show before you can leave the country?
a-must b-had to c-have to d-has to
20- you ………… to show your passport when you leave the country.
a-must b-have c-had d-needn't
21- Before our next English lesson, what must we ……. For homework?
a-does b-done c-did d-do

22- What do you …….. do at school every day? What mustn't you do?
a-have to b-has to c-must d-had to

23- What ……..you remember to do this weekend?
a-have b-must c-will have to d- had to

24- We………..buy a present for Ali's birthday.
a-have to b-need c-must d-are forced

Necessity in the past الضرورة فى الماضى

It was necessary	it wasn't necessary	
had to + inf	didn't have to + inf	ذكى
	didn't need to + inf	ذكى
	needn't have + p.p	حمار

1. He (**had to** – didn't have to) apologize to his friend, he insulted him.
2. She (had to – **didn't need to**) past the letter yesterday as she can past it today.
3. I'm angry, he (**had to** – should – didn't have to) tell me the time of the conference. I missed it.

1. Ali …………brought food. We already have a lot
a-needn't have b-must not have c-must have d-should have
2. we didn't have a test today so I …………for it last night
a-needn't revise b-didn't have to revise
c-mustn't revise d-needn't have to revise
3. -Poor Hany ……… go to hospital yesterday after he hurt his hand.
a-must b- has to c-had to d-needn't
4. Mona…….. to take her sunglasses because it was cloudy
a-doesn't need b-needn't c-didn't have d-doesn't have
5. Yunis ……. to do the maths exercise again because he got it all wrong
a-had b-won't have c-didn't have d-doesn't need
6. They …….leave the school yesterday after they heard the fire bell
a-had to b-have to c-has to d- must
7. The students ……….written all those notes. All the information is typed for them
a-didn't have to b-mustn't c-didn't need to d-needn't have
8. In school last week, why …………..you have to do P.E?
a-didn't b-won't c-don't d-mustn't
9. What did you………..buy when you went to the bookshop last weekend?
a-must b-had to c-have to d-has to
10. What ………. I have brought to your house yesterday evening?
a-don't b-needn't c-didn't d-don't
11. What did you do recently that you ……..have done?
a-doesn't b-mustn't c-needn't d-didn't
12. we…….run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there
a-needn't have b-didn't have to c-don't have to d-must
13. Poor Walid broke his leg yesterday and ……..go to hospital
a-had to b-must c-needn't d-has to

فى المستقبل

إثبات	نفـــــى
- Must/ have to/ will have to + inf - will need to	- won't have to - won't need to + inf

- He (**will have** – has) to visit that man tomorrow .
- He (will – **won't**) have to get up early tomorrow it's holiday .

ركز مع الدرس

1- Have to / Has to مضطـــــــر أن

- تستخدم **(Have to / Has to)** للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينـــا وليـــس أمامنـــا اختيـــار

- Have to / Has to = It is necessary to do..... (We have no other choice)

- You **have to** show your passport when you leave the country.
- I can't go out. **I have to** work.
- My children **have to** go to school next year.

- يمكن استخدام **have to** في الأزمنة المختلفة (ما عدا الأزمنة المستمرة)

- I **had to** work six days a week. = - **It was necessary** for me **to** work six days a week.
- My flight is at six in the morning. **I'll have to** get up early.
- **Have** you ever **had to** go to hospital?

- تستخدم **(do / does)** مع **(Have to / Has to)** في السؤال و النفي

- Do you have to put on a uniform at school?
- She doesn't have to buy a new dictionary for school?

- يمكن أن نستخدم **(have got to / has got to)** بدلا من **(have to / has to)**

- I have got to go to work on time.
- She is late for the meeting, she has got to take a taxi.

- نستخدم **(have got to / has got to)** في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد

- **Have** you **got to** be at the office every day?
- **Has** that man **got to** carry all the boxes by himself?

2- Don't / Doesn't have to / Don't / Doesn't need to / needn't :

It is <u>NOT</u> necessary to do..... غير مضطر - لا داعي أن

- She isn't late for school so she **doesn't have to / needn't** hurry.
- When you are on holiday, you **needn't** go to bed early.
- She **doesn't have to** work on Saturday.

3- - Didn't have to = didn't need to = It wasn't necessary to..., so we didn't لم نضطر أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث <u>لـــــم يتـــــم</u> في الماضي لأنه لم يكن ضروريا)

- We **didn't have to** go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
- I **didn't have to** do the shopping yesterday. My brother did it.

4- Needn't have + PP. : It wasn't necessary to....., but we did

- يستخدم هذا الفعل للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث <u>تــــم</u> في الماضي على الرغم من كونه لم يكن ضروريا)

- You **needn't have brought** your umbrella. It's not going to rain.

- لاحظ الفارق في المعني في الجمل الآتية

- I **didn't have to buy** more bread. We already have a lot.
  (I **<u>didn't buy</u>** bread because we have some.)
- I **needn't have bought** more bread. We already have a lot.
  (I **<u>bought</u>** bread, but it was not necessary because we have some.)

didn't need to / didn't have to ← لم يكن ضروري و لذا لم يفعل
needn't have + p.p ← لم يكن ضروري و لكنـــه فعل

- He (didn't have to water – **needn't have watered**) the garden. Really he did.

must / have to / will have to - في حالة التعبير عن الضرورة في المستقبل نستخدم

- I **have to get** up early tomorrow. - I'**ll have to** send the fax tomorrow.

- لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام **need to** كفعل ناقص واستخدام **need** كفعل عادي بمعني يحتاج أو يتطلب

- This job **needs** computer skills. - I **need to** finish the job early. = I **must** finish it early.

Mustn't + inf. متى نستخدم

❖ للتعبير عن شئ غير مسموح أو ممنوع قانوناً / خطير جداً وضار بك .

• against the law / rules	ضد القواعد / القوانين	• be forbidden	محظور
• be banned	ممنوع	• **be not allowed**	غير مسموح
• No parking /smoking			

- You (don't have to – **mustn't**) eat this food it's sour فاسد .
- You (don't need to – **mustn't**) park here it's not allowed .
- You (don't have to – **mustn't**) take photos . It's a " No photography sign .

تستخدم **mustn't** فى النصح الشديد بالنفى وكذلك الأمنية .

- You (**mustn't** – don't have to) spend too much money you will want some for your holiday .

must يفضل

1- warm invitation دعوة حارة بشدة

- you (**must** – have to) come to my party .

2- strong advice نصح قوى

- You (**must** – have to) wash your hands before meals .

3- feelings and wishes مشاعر ورغبات خاصة بنا

- I really (have – **must**) read this story . It's so interesting .

4- a strong reminder تذكرة لنفسك بقوة مثل الواجبات

- I (must – have to) visit my friend who is very ill .

5-Criticizing others
للتعبير عن نقد سلوكيات الاخرين mustنستخدم

- **Must**-have to)you always interrupt me when I'm speaking?

- **ركز في الفارق بين الجملتين**
- I **have to** stop smoking .It's the doctor's orders
- هنا التوقف عن التدخين هو الخيار الاوحد رغم انه من الشخص نفسه
- I **must** stop smoking .It's the doctor's advice
- عندما نذكر كلمة نصيحه الافضل must

need to , must عن have to يفضل

نستخدم هذه الصيغة عندما تتحدث عن أمور مفروضة علينا فى الخارج أى ليس لنا الاختيار نفعلها اضطراراً لأننا لسنا مخيرين فى فعلها

- You (**have to** – must) pass your exam to go to the university .
- You (shouldn't – **mustn't**) park here, it's not allowed قوانين

- This is my invitation card, you (should – **must**) come.
- This book is interesting, you (should – **must**) read it.
- You (**must** – should) wear the seat belt, it's a rule.

Should have +p.p	كان يجب ان يفعل و لكنه لم يفعل و هنا اللوم
Had to+inf	كان مضطرا ان يفعل اي انه فعل و هنا ضرورة حدوث شئ في الماضي

1-He(**should have borrowed**-**had to borrow**)some money from his brother . he borrowed from his friend

2-He (should have borrowed-**had to borrow**)some money from his brother but he gave him just half of the sum

have to و must حاجه بسيطه نتذكر بها

must	have to	
+ الافضل ✓	✓	النصح بشده
✓	×	الالزام الداخلى
✓	+الافضل ✓	الالزام الخارجى
بشكل عام ✓	بشكل خاص ✓	القوانين بالايجاب
mustn't ✓	×	القوانين بالسلب
الافضل ✓ ✓	✓	الضروره فى المستقبل
✓	✓	الضروره فى المضارع
✓	×	الدعوة
✓	×	الترشيح
✓	×	الاستنتاج
✓	×	تستخدم كفعل مساعد

- You(**must**- have to) obey your parent.
- I (**must**-have to) visit my friend. He is sick.
- There are no abuse I (**have to**- must) take a taxi.
- You (must-**have to**) be here before 8 o'clock.
- I (**must**-have to) meet my uncle tomorrow.
- (must- **Do**) they have to take this ?
- You (**must**-have to) come round and visit us.
- The film is very interestingly. You (**must**-have to) watch it.

Should / Shouldn't / Must/ Mustn't

should / shouldn't

1-تستخدم لتقديم النصيحة	2-تستخدم لطلب النصح
3-تستخدم لعمل الاقتراح	4-تستخدم لإبداء الرأي الشخصي

☺You (**should**- shouldn't) study hard. (نصح)
☺You (should- **shouldn't**) be lazy. (نصح)
☺What (**should I** – I should) do to pass the test? (طلب نصح)
☺We (**should** -shouldn't) study here. It's a quiet place. (اقتراح)
☺You (**should**- shouldn't) choose this course , it's suitable for you.(إبداء الرأي)

صبغة المبني للمجهول
Should/ shouldn't be +p.p

-Your shoes (should- **should be**) polished regularly.

☺هناك الكثير من الطرق المستخدمة لإعطاء نصيحة مثبتة بمعني يجب ان او منفية بمعني يجب ألا:

should +inf يجب أن	shouldn't +inf يجب ألا
-فاعل should + inf	-فاعل shouldn't + inf
-فاعل ought to +inf	-فاعل oughtn't to +inf
-فاعل had better+inf	-فاعل had better not+inf
-فاعل (am-is-are) supposed to+inf	-فاعل (am-is-are) not supposed to+inf
it's advisable to +inf	it's inadvisable to +inf
it's desirable to +inf	it's undesirable to +inf
it's better to +inf	it's better not to +inf
I advise you to +inf	I advise you not to +inf
my advice to you is to +inf	my advice to you is not to +inf
If I were you, I would +inf	If I were you, I wouldn't +inf
it will be a good idea to +inf	it will be a good idea not to +inf
it would be better if + فاعل+ ماضي بسيط	it wouldn't be better if + فاعل+ ماضي بسيط
it would be sensible to +inf	it wouldn't be sensible to +inf it would be insensible

-You should drink water every day.

=If I were you, I'd drink water every day. =It's desirable to drink water every day.

=You are supposed to drink water every day

-You shouldn't watch much TV.

=You had better not watch much TV. =You oughtn't to watch much TV.

=It's inadvisable to watch much TV.

should (ought to) have +p.p كان يجب ان يفعل ولم يفعل

shouldn't (ought not to) have +p.p كان يجب الا يفعل ولكنه فعل

-He should (arrive – **have arrived**) early for your exam. He missed half an hour.

-معني الكلام أنه لم يصل مبكرا

-You shouldn't (insult –**have insulted)** her. She was very sad because of that.

Must

1-نصيحة قوية "شخص يعزه خالص"	5-الدعوة الحارة
2-نصيحة قوية "يتولد ضرر لو مسمعتش الكلام"	6-الإلزام الداخلي
3-القوانين "تص القوانين"	7-الترشيح ولكن الافضل should
4-الضرورة في المضارع	8-الضرورة في المستقبل

1-The father said to his son "you (should- **must**) study hard the exam is coming up.
2-You (should- **must**) brush your teeth or they will rot.
3-You (should- **must**) come to the party. This is your invitation.
4-I (should – **must**) visit my friend, he is very sick.
5-I (**must** – should) go to the airport tomorrow. It's necessary.
6-Pepole (should- **must**) show their passport in the airport.
7-You (**must**- have to) read this book, it's very interesting.

Mustn't

-We use mustn't +inf. To express prohibition:

-Something dangerous or against law:

نستخدم mustn't للتعبير عن التحريم (شيء خطير او ضد القانون)

- You (don't have to – **mustn't**) eat this food it's sour فاسد .
- You (don't need to – **mustn't**) park here it's not allowed .
- You (don't have to – **mustn't**) take photos . It's a " No photography sign

Mustn't

=It is forbidden (to +inf / from +v-ing).
=It is banned (to +inf / from +v-ing).
=It is prohibited (to +inf / from v-ing).
=be not allowed
=No +v-ing.
=It's against the law to +inf.
=It's illegal to +inf.
= فاعل (am-is-are) not allowed (permitted) to +inf

-You mustn't smoke in hospitals.

=It is forbidden (banned- prohibited) to smoke in hospitals.
=It is not allowed (permitted) to smoke in hospitals.
=Smoking in hospitals is not allowed (forbidden).
=No smoking in hospitals.
=You are not allowed to smoke in hospitals.
=We also can use it for strong advice.

-تستخدم **(mustn't)** ايضا لتقديم نصيحة قوية:

-You mustn't stay up late as it is bad for your health.
-You mustn't water your time in vain.

☺ملحوظة خفيفة للطلبة الظريفة:

كلا من **have to / must** تستخدم في القوانين ولكن الافضل:

must +inf	عندما نتحدث عن نص القانون وليس موقف
have to	عندما نتحدث عما يلزمنا به القانون
mustn't +inf	القانون بالسلب

-Drivers (**must**- have to) wear helmets.
-You (**have to**- must) wear the helmet or you'll fine.

Choose the correct answer: practice3

1) I ……….forget to email my cousin today. It's his birthday
a-mustn't b-needn't c-ought not to d-shouldn't
2) the sign in the park says that people ……..walk on the grass.
a-needn't b-might not c-should d-mustn't
3) When you go to Alexandria, you ……. visit the library. It's amazing
a-have to b-must c-will d-need
4) we've moved to a new house, so you ……………come round and see it
a-mustn't b- has to c- must d- have to
5) we ….. pass our exams to get into university.
a-must have b-mustn't c-don't have to d-have to
6) you…… put the newspaper on the oven. It might burn
a-mustn't b-don't have to c-need to d-needn't have

7) My sister made a cake . you ….. try it. It's lovely
a-have to b-had to c-must d-needn't

8) you…….. come and see me tomorrow
a-must b-has to c-had to d-mustn't

9) I……..stop eating sweets! They are bad for me.
a-must b-have to c-need d-needn't

10) You………go and see your sick grandfather in hospital.
a-should b-have c-ought d-shouldn't

11) You……..wash if you've touched an infected bird.
a-mustn't b-shouldn't c-must d-should

12) You………always wash your hands before you eat.
a-need b-should c-have d-ought

13) The tourists……….visit the museum. It's very interesting.
a-must b-mustn't c-has to d- might

14) You…….boil water before you drink it.
a-shouldn't b-should c-has to d-don't have to

15) You………..park there. It says, "No Parking"
a-must b-don't have to c-needn't d-mustn't

16) You……….park here. I mean you are not allowed to park here.
a-mustn't b-aren't allowed c-are prohibited d-aren't needed

-عند ذكر نص القانون المنفي الافضل ان نقول:

It is not allowed	**It's banned**
It's forbidden	**It's against the law**

-بينما عندما نتحدث عن موقف معين:

You are not allowed	**You are banned…….**
You are forbidden from v-ing	

- you mustn't drive cars over the speed limit.(You are prohibited- **It's prohibited**)
- -She is (not allowed to- **forbidden from**) using her mobile at home.

*لا تنسي:

-It's necessary = It's a necessity= it's a must
It's a (necessary- a necessity- **must**) to show your passport now

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-The booklets lists the dos and ……..of caring for allergic children.
a-does b-did c-not's d-don'ts

2-An orange cat named Bussy was our first family………
a-bit b-pet c-bet d-let

3-The victims were all……….first aid at the scene of the accident.
a-received b-produced c-given d-introduced

4-Do you think this milk is still good? No, you'd better………it
a-sin b-bin c-pin d-fin

5-I have an……… to strawberries. I get a rash if I eat one.
a-allergy b-allergic c-allege d-infection

6-The mother moved the medicine………., out of the child's reach.
a-out b-into c-away d-in

7-All the hotel rooms are equipped with a soft mattress and fresh ………..
a-feeding b-kidding c-wedding d-bedding

8-Poor …….and sanitation in the restaurant keeps many customers away.
a-vitamin b-clearance c-clean d-hygiene

9-Having played in the garden, the children…….each other down and walked home.
a-rusted b-dusted c-trusted d-insisted
10-The………was carried out by a team of scientists at Cairo University.
a-enquiry b-enquire c-research d-reserve
11-A cloud of …….rose into the air as the woman was beating the rug.
a-mud b-soil c-dust d-floor
12-It's a good idea to take a first……..kit with you when you go camping.
a-add b-aid c-aim d-air
13-He lost his job, but at ……….he still has a home.
a-feast b-lost c-last d-least
14-Officers tried to ……….him but he did not regain consciousness.
a-translate b-negotiate c-resuscitate d-facilitate
15-Most people stay in bed late………..Friday morning.
a-at b-on c-in d-out
16-The injured driver was able to get out of his car and call………… services on his mobile phone.
a-emergent b-hostel c-hotel d-emergency
17-If you're hot, why not take…….that woolen suit?
a-out b-in c-off d-down
18-The room filled with smoke, and it was becoming difficult to……….
a-clothe b-bread c-breathe d-breathing
19-During the school year students have to study hard as…….as they can.
a-few b-little c-many d-often
20-What can you suggest……..your home clean?
a-to keep b-keeping c-to keeping d-kept
21-For health reasons he always takes the stairs to the first…….rather than the lift.
a-floor b-flour c-flower d-flood
22-The government called an……….meeting to discuss the crisis.
a-currency b-emergency c-emergent d-embassy
23- She had a cold; she was constantly……….and coughing.
a-dreaming b-sighing c-feeding d-sneezing
24-………….will breed in your kitchen if you don't keep the surfaces clean.
a-Infants b-Bacteria c-Genes d-Criteria
25-The house still needed a lot of work, but……….least the kitchen was finished.
a-at b-on c-in d-out
26-Lack of……………between friends is very destructive in their relationship.
a-confident b-nourishment c-trust d-supply
27-This detergent will……….. even old stains.
a-remove b-move c-prove d-improve
28-Parents should teach their children to behave……..in public.
a-probably b-properly c-property d-proper
29-I have my public life and my private life, and as far as possible I try to keep them…………
a-unified b-united c-separate d-linked
30-Our house is dusty. It needs a really good………
a-clip b-vanish c-clear d-clean
31-I soaked my trousers in some……..water and the stains came out.
a-soapy b-soup c-muddy d-rainy
32-Many illnesses in these temporary refugeeاللاجئيين camps are the result of bad………..
a-invitation b-invention c-sanitation d-innovation
33- A lot of TV adverts these days invite viewers to visit the company's………
a-website b-slight c-sight d-slight

34-A number of workers fell ill after breathing………poisonous gas.
a-through **b-of** **c-out** **d-in**
35-He's such a liar- you can't ……….a word he says.
a-doubt **b-trust** **c-trustful** **d-rust**
36-It was clear that the ship was in ………..of sinking.
a-safety **b-dangerous** **c-danger** **d-hazardous**
37-I try to keep meat………from other food in the fridge.
a-further **b-farther** **c-separate** **d-near**
38-I have told my wife that there will be an………person for today's dinner?
a-plus **b-minus** **c-addition** **d-extra**
39-A……….is a piece of soft thin paper, used especially for blowing your nose on.
a-cover **b-sheet** **c-issue** **d-tissue**
40-Raschel moved out of her apartment because her roommate was too……..
a-messy **b-noise** **c-mess** **d-kind**
41- The fire alarm went off and we were instructed to……….the building.
a-situate **b-graduate** **c-clean off** **d-evacuate**
42-My sister had a shower and changed into………clothes
a-clean **b-clear** **c-cloudy** **d-dusty**
43-You need one person to keep the cat ……………and another to trim its claws.
a-seal **b-sail** **c-still** **d-till**
44-Trees help to………..carbon dioxide from the atmosphere.
a-increase **b-remove** **c-add** **d-produce**
45-The………was dry after three weeks without rain. Most of the plant died.
a-ground **b-dust** **c-earth** **d-soil**
46-I can't go with them to the cinema as I have a lot of exams coming……..
a-onto **b-off** **c-in** **d-up**
47-My sister recommends using bicarbonate of soda as a general household………
a-stain **b-gardener** **c-cleaner** **d-speck**
48-If you cut raw meat on a …………..board, you should wash it well before using it for vegetables.
a-chopping **b-shopping** **c-shipping** **d-clicking**
49- You should put your rubbish in the…………… and remember to clean it because there is a lot of bacteria inside.
a-pin **b- bin** **c- ban** **d-bit**
50- When we returned from our holiday, the house didn't feel clean because there was …………..on all the furniture.
a) mud **b) soil** **c) dust** **d) wind**
51- Plants need sunlight, water and good …………. to grow well.
a) tile **b) soil** **c) earth** **d) floor**
52- My mum tells me to change the ……………… on my bed once a week.
a. carpet **b. curtain** **c bedding** **d. towel**
53- His room is dirty and the bathroom is messy, but at .... he had a shower this morning!
a- last **b-latest** **c-list** **d-least**
54- I can't stop sneezing because I have an .... to your pets.
a- allergy **b-allergic** **c- alley** **d-allergens**
55- Bacteria like to………. in warm, wet places like a kitchen sponge.
a-plant **b-make** **c-grow** **d-soil**
56- The possibility that someone or sth will be harmed or killed is called …..
a- danger **b- dangerous** **c-generosity** **d- generous**
57- Ambulances drive very fast when there is a/an ....
a- urgent **b-emergent** **c-dangerous** **d-emergency**

58- I've still got to clean the bathroom ……………

a. flower **b. flour** **c floor** **d.flat**

59- You must take care of your health to ………illnesses .

a- attract **b- deny** **c- avoid** **d- cure**

60- Don't make too much noise. The baby is ....

A – sleep **b- asleep** **c- sleepily** **d-sleeper**

61- shut up , I want to listen to the ……………of the president speech .

a- translate **b- translator** **c-interpret** **d-interpreter**

62- The room filled with smoke, and it was becoming difficult to …………….

a- breeze **b- breathing** **c-breathe** **d-breath**

63- The town is cut off from ……………..with the outside world.

a-contact **b-contract** **c- connect** **d- communicate**

64- the state must give a due care to …………………..research .

a- science **b-scientist** **c- scientific** **d-scientifically**

65- …………is to send people away from a dangerous place to a safe place .

a- evaluate **b- evacuate** **c- evacuation** **d-evacuee**

66- Large areas of the forest are reported to be …………. Fire

a- in **b- on** **c- for** **d- to**

67- The government has promised to spend more on...........and education.

a. wealth **b. healthy** **c search** **d. health**

68- You should always take your shoes........at the door.

a. off **b. of** **c turns** **d. place**

69- She's doing ………………….into the connection between crime and poverty.

a. recommendations b. decisions **c. research** **d. suggestions**

70- ....are a very small living things, some of which cause illness or disease.

a.Diseases **b. Bacterium** **c medicines** **d. Bacteria**

71- 23-Their neighbours complained .... their constant loud music.

a- of **b- about** **c- for** **d- to**

72- This law makes it illegal to smoke in public places.

a.luck **b.lawyer** **c. law** **d. low**

73- My father asked me to.......sure you lock the door behind you when you go out.

a) make **b)do** **e)take** **d)give**

74- Physical exercise can .... you against heart disease.

a-provide **b-prevent** **c-produce** **d-protect**

75- Children are required to attend school ……………………..

a. regularity **b. regular** **c. irregular** **d. regularly**

76- 28-The boy and another seriously .... person were evacuated by air ambulance

a. injure **b. injured** **c. injury** **d. harmful**

77- The drug is a useful form of pain relief for many ……………. conditions.The drug is a useful form of pain relief for many medical conditions.

a. medical **b. medicine** **c medically** **d.cures**

78- Ahmed didn't.......to any of his emails.

a.answer **b. respond** **c receive** **d. sent**

79- People were ……. all over the place as if it were the heart of allergy season.

a. sneezing **b. freezing** **c breezing** **d. tweezing**

80- Parking is readily ……………………… near the station entrance.

a) valuable **b) available** **c) valid** **d) availability**

81- Air .... is usually high in good weather and low in bad weather.

a-measure **b-treasure** **c-pressure** **d-pressed**

82- The car should not be parked there so the police will have it...... ....

a-placed b-removed c-cleaned d-serviced

83- The farmers use both animal and human ……….. as fertilizer.
a. waste b. letter c. taste d. waist

84- He'd had more than enough practice to become an ………………
a.expert b. export c experience d. experienced

85- Ayman took a deep …………….., then jumped into the pool.
a.breeze b. breathe c breathless d. breath

86- If your baby has a fever you should call the doctor ………………..
a. immediate b. regularly c properly d-immediately

87- I tried to ………… the feeling to my doctor, but he didn't understand.
a. breathe b. prescribe c evacuate d. describe

88- She pulled the ………….. up and went to sleep.She pulled the blanket up and went to sleep.
a. bank b. blink c blanket d. blank

89- There are a ………….. number of taxis for such a small city.
a. surprise b. surprising c surprisingly d. surprised

90- when there is a fire , ……..a blanket around injured people .
a- wrap b- move c- tie d- -evacuate

91- Food must be heated to a high temperature to kill harmful ………….. .
a. vitamins b. proteins c. bacteria d. fats

92- The nurse carried in a baby wrapped in a warm ………….. .
a. blink b. blanket c. bleed d. block

93- The room was filled with smoke, and it was becoming difficult to ………….. .
a. breath b. beneath c. bath d. breathe

94- Our bodies are designed to ………….. carbohydrates and store fats.
a. bury b. bully c. burn d. bull

95- ………….. keeps blood and oxygen flowing to the heart and brain.
a. CPR b. Hygiene c. Allergy d. Respond

96- Helicopters were used to ………….. people from their burning homes.
a. excavate b. evacuate c. evaluate d. evolve

97- Many wild plants and animals are in ………….. of extinction.
a. dangerous b. harmful c. damaging d. danger

98- He began to look for a new job ………….. as soon as he left his job.
a. immediate b. instant c. immediately d. rapid

99- Dr Malek advised Ali to ……… a clean cloth around his arm till the wound heals.
a. burn b. research c. grow d. wrap

100- The victims were all given ………….. at the scene of the accident.
a. blanket b. first aid c. emergency d. services

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:Grammar

1- You ………….. park your car here because the sign says "No Parking".
a. should b. could c. mustn’t d. must

2- I don't think you ………….. smoke so much.
a. should b. necessary c. mustn’t d. shouldn't

3- They ………….. eat that cheese. It’s green!
a. should b. must c. mustn’t d. have to

4- It’s ………….. to wash your hands after you’ve touched your pets.
a. unimportant b. must c. inadvisable d. necessary

5- You ………….. never speak to your mother like this.
a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. needn't

6- Should I tell her the truth or ………….. say nothing?
a. I shouldn't b. mustn't I c. should I d. I mustn't

7- You ………….. to be so selfish.
a. oughtn't **b. ought** **c. shouldn't** **d. mustn't**

8- You ………….. follow the rules or you will be punished.
a. shouldn't **b. must** **c. mustn't** **d. has to**

9- Drivers ………….. cross the crossroads in their cars during red lights.
a. should **b. must** **c. ought to** **d. mustn't**

10- Where ………….. park our car?
a. we should **b. should we** **c. we must** **d. have we**

11- Malek is very tall. He ………….. play basketball.
a. can't **b. shouldn't** **c. should** **d. mustn't**

12- You ……… come and see me tomorrow.
a- must **b- mustn't** **c- have** **d- had to**

13- My sister made a cake. You ……… try it. It's lovely.
a- have to **b- must** **c- had to** **d- needn't**

14- We ………….. visit our friend who is ill in hospital.
a- needn't **b- mustn't** **c- must** **d- are necessary**

15- You ………….. wash your hands after working in the garden.
a. should **b. mustn't** **c. oughtn't to** **d. are forbidden to**

16- You ………….. eat food after it falls on the floor.
a. should **b. mustn't** **c. must** **d. have to**

17- You ………….. clean your keyboard frequently.
a. mustn't **b. shouldn't** **c. are prohibited to** **d. should**

18- You ………….. drive a car if you are very tired.
a. should **b. ought to** **c. mustn't** **d. are permitted to**

19- You ………….. talk when the teacher is explaining things to you.
a. should **b. mustn't** **c. must** **d. ought to**

20- It is necessary that he doesn't eat so many sweets. He …… cut down on sweets.
a. shouldn't **b. ought** **c. had to** **d. must**

21- You are overweight. You ………….. go on a diet.
a. should **b. mustn't** **c. oughtn't to** **d. are banned to**

22- Smoking is not allowed in the building. You ………….. smoke in the building.
a. must **b. must not** **c. should not** **d. should**

23- ………….. always remind you of need to follow the proper procedure?
a. Do I must **b. I must** **c. have got I** **d. Must I**

24- If Sally wants to keep her job, she ……… change her bad attitude towards her boss.
a. shouldn't **b. must** **c. mustn't** **d. have to**

25- The kids ………….. spend so much time in front of the TV.
a. ought to **b. ought to not** **c. shouldn't** **d. should**

26- We mustn't park on the yellow line. It is ………….. to park on the yellow line.
a. allowed **b. permitted** **c. not prohibited** **d. forbidden**

27- I think we ………….. reserve our holiday in advance.
a. should **b. shouldn't** **c. ought** **d. oughtn't to**

28- We ………….. follow the directions Judy gave us, or we'll never find the street her house is on.
a. oughtn't **b. must** **c. mustn't** **d. shouldn't**

29- You ………….. be proud of yourself. What you did was wrong!
a. must **b. should** **c. shouldn't** **d. oughtn't**

30- You ………….. read the introduction at the beginning of the book.
a. ought to **b. shouldn't** **c. ought** **d. are allowed**

31- I'm really worried about Moaz. He ………….. have been here by now.
a. must **b. shouldn't** **c. ought** **d. should**

32- This is a very expensive piece of equipment, so it ………….. with care.
a. must move **b. shouldn't be moved** **c. must be moved** **d. ought to move**
33- She …… do her homework, otherwise her parents won't let her go to the party.
a. must **b. shouldn't** **c. mustn't** **d. ought**
34- I believe that the government ………….. preserve the buildings in the city centre.
a. oughtn't to **b. should** **c. needn't** **d. mustn't**
35- You can borrow my bike, but you ………….. promise to take good care of it.
a- needn't **b- have to** **c- mustn't** **d- must**
36- You ………….. to drink lots of water when you're on a diet .
a. should **b. ought** **c. shouldn't** **d. must**
37- It's ………….. for children to be medically examined at least twice a year
a. undesirable **b. inadvisable** **c. better** **d. illegal**
38- You ………….. look both ways when crossing the road.
a. shouldn't **b. ought** **c. must** **d. mustn't**
39- The tyres of my car have worn out. I ………….. get new ones.
a. must **b. shouldn't** **c. has got to** **d. shall not**
40- Students ………….. use their mobile phones during the lessons.
a. must **b. should** **c. mustn't** **d. ought**
41- If I were you, I ………….. drive so carelessly
a. shouldn't **b. would** **c. should** **d. wouldn't**
42- In case of an earthquake, people ………….. remain calm.
a. mustn't **b. should** **c. aren't allowed to** **d. shouldn't**
43- Which dress ………….. buy? The blue or the red one?
a. should I **b. I mustn't** **c. I oughtn't to** **d. should I be**
44- You ………….. arrive on time for lessons. It's important not to be late.
a. shouldn't **b. ought** **c. must** **d. mustn't**
45- You ………….. have more confidence in yourself if you want to succeed.
a. oughtn't to **b. should** **c. needn't** **d. mustn't**
46- 1You……….sit so near the TV for long. It's bad for your eyes.
a-shouldn't have **b-have to** **c-shouldn't** **d-must**
47- You ………sat so near the TV. Your sight has become so poor.
a-shouldn't have **b-have to** **c-shouldn't** **d-must**
48- You………read this story. it's very funny.
a-should **b-need to** **c-mustn't** **d-have to**
49- You……….forget the lunch with our neighbours! We have already invited them.
a-don't have to **b-should** **c-mustn't** **d-have to**
50- Please, tell her that she………get good results at school!
a-mustn't **b-have to** **c-needn't** **d-has to**
51- You………her in hospital- she is extremely sick!
a-must see **b-should have seen** **c-shouldn't see** **d-mustn't see**
52- You……her in hospital-she was extremely sick!
a-must see **b-should have seen** **c-shouldn't see** **d-mustn't see**
53- Dad………..and see a doctor. He has no health problems.
a-should go **b-shouldn't have gone** **c-shouldn't go** **d-doesn't need to**
54- Dad………and see a doctor. His cough is getting worse all the time.
a-should go **b-shouldn't have gone** **c-shouldn't go** **d-doesn't need to**
55- I am Ben. You…….call me Mr. Clark.
a-must **b-had to** **c-don't need to** **d-shouldn't**
56- I……….to work on Saturdays. It's my day off
a-must **b- must not** **c-needn't go** **d-didn't have to go**

57- I ……..to work last Saturday. It was my day off.
a-must **b- must not** **c-needn't go** **d-didn't have to go**

58- At the end of the month, the Post Office will send him an enormous bill which he………..pay
a-have to **b-mustn't** **c-will have to** **d-had to**

59- You've got plenty of time. You ………hurry.
a-shouldn't **b-needn't** **c-must** **d-should**

60- He sees very badly, he………wear glasses all the time.
a-has to **b-shouldn't** **c-needn't** **d-can't**

61- You……..pay to use the library. It's free.
a-don't have to **b-have to** **c-will have to** **d-must**

62- The buses were all full; I ………take a taxi.
a-mustn't **b-don't have to** **c-has to** **d-have to**

63- You………drive fast; there is a speed limit here.
a-should **b-needn't** **c-mustn't** **d-has to**

64- You…….argue with your father, you must obey him.
a-have to **b-don't have to** **c-mustn't** **d-need to**

65- A: I bought two bottles of milk. B: You………milk; we have a lot in the house.
a-mustn't **b-needn't** **c-needn't have bought** **d-didn't have to buy**

66- happened because he was driving on the wrong side of the road. He ……on the right.
a-shouldn't drive **b-shouldn't have driven**
c-should have driven **d-had to drive**

67- You………shout. I can hear you very well.
a-must **b-don't need** **c-should** **d-don't have to**

68- you look pretty tired. I think you …….go to bed early tonight.
a-mustn't **b-needn't** **c-should** **d-has to**

69- Sarah…….use glasses, because she wears contact lenses.
a-needn't **b-needn't have** **c-mustn't** **d-have to**

70- You really………go to the Louvre if you're in Paris. It's wonderful.
a-must **b-needn't** **c-shouldn't** **d-don't have to**

Translate into Arabic:

1- Keeping the environment clean is a must. Therefore, individuals should cooperate with the government to create a healthy environment.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………………………

2- First aid is the first and immediate assistance given to any person suffering from either a minor or serious illness or injury.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………………………

3-Men and women must realize their equal roles and strive to complement each other in their shared struggle to improve their life and achieve happiness.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………………………

4-Do you know how dangerous stress can be? It affects us both physically and mentally. So reducing stress is something that we should try to do through some form of exercise.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………………………

5-Nobody is going to hand you success on a silver plate. In order to be successful, you should have courage, ambition, self- confidence and self-dependence.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

6-Poverty has become a great issue in our world. Though many organizations have been created to find solutions for this problem, nobody could not save our world completely from poverty.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

Translate into English:

1-لقد وهب الله مصر كثيرا من المصادر الطبيعية لو احسن استغلالها لأصبحنا من اغني الدول.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

2-إن تزايد السكان في الدول النامية يعوقها عن التقدم السريع.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

Write an essay of: "What to do if there's a fire"

If there's a fire, you need to act quickly. Make sure you are prepared and that everyone in your house knows exactly what to do. Make sure everyone in the house knows about the fire – shout and get everyone together. You should have an escape route planned that everyone in your house is familiar with. If you don't have one already, follow the link below for information on how to make an escape plan for your home. As you escape, remember not to delay to save valuables or look for pets before you open doors, feel them with the back of your hand; if they're warm, don't open them – the fire is on the other side. If you're escaping with others, stay together if you can. If your clothes catch fire, don't run around – you will fan the flames and make them burn faster. You should lie down - this makes it harder for the fire to spread and reduces the effect of flames on your face and head. When you can't get out by your escape route, get everyone into one room. You should choose a room with a window, if you can. You should find somewhere safe to wait near the building. If there's someone still inside, wait for the Fire and Rescue Service to arrive. You can tell them about the person and they will be able to find them quicker than you. If you go back into the building, you will slow down the fire-fighters' efforts to rescue anyone else missing, as well as putting your own life in great danger.

Test (1) based on Unit (7)

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the five options given:

1-This is the only room available. The antonyms of "available" is………

(busy – obtainable – engaged – accessible – free)

2-Helicopters were used to evacuate people from their homes. The synonyms of the word "evacuate" are…….

(empty – abandon – fill – pack – evaluate)

Choose the correct answer:

3-Hygiene reduces the…….of being ill.

(help – link – possibility – suggestion)

4-My sister has a/an……to milk so she can't drink it at all.

(emergency – experience – allergy – fluency)

5-Mountain climbers need special……..in order to complete their mission properly.

(quantities – equipment – instruments – equalities)

6-The teacher asked the students to……….the poem.

(remove – separate – contain – interpret)

7-No one could cheat by swallowing anything whole because we had to chew it all at ……..five times. **(last – least – loss – list)**

8-The local officials understood the danger and made an informed decision to….the city.

(evacuate – live – install – empty)

9-She cleaned the…….with antiseptic and put a band aid on it.

(cut – disease – illness – pain)

10-Physical exercise can protect you………heart disease.

(against – with – by – for)

11-That's "No swimming" sign. This means you……..get into the sea.

(mustn't – must – needn't – shouldn't)

12-We……..always remember that the way to success is not always easy.

(must – can't – need – would)

13-Traffic rules……………..

(must break – mustn't break – must be broken – mustn't be broken)

14-I…….have a licence to drive my car.

(should – mustn't – don't have to – have to)

15-What…….when I feel dizzy?

(should I do – should do – should I have done – I should do)

16-Both Jana and her brother .... law

(is studying - are studying - studies - are studied)

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: النموذج التجريبي 2020

Flowers are more than just a pretty way to fill a garden or bouquet باقة. They improve your overall عام/شامل quality of life. From their scent رائحة to their shape, they have the power to reduce stress. inspire creative thinking and even lessen anxieties القلق. Because they are often given as gifts to friends and loved ones. they have even been known to make people happier and more optimistic متفائل.

Flowers are considered a thing of beauty thanks to their vivid مشرق colors. interesting shapes and sizes. This makes them a favorite of those who can appreciate their qualities. The delicacy رقة of their petals تويجة النبات can often serve as a reminder of the fragility سهولة الكسر of nature and life. Because of their beauty, flowers are considered an inspiration الهام to creative thinkers. They have inspired countless works of art such as classic paintings.

Many flowers have natural scents that they emit يخرج when in bloom ازهار. They have long been shown to remove toxins السموم from the air, especially when positioned in such a way that they can receive ventilation تهوية to **disperse** تنتشر / تفرق throughout the space and help spread their natural perfume عطر. They are also commonly used in recipes وصفات for

perfumes. Because they increase positively in moods, they can reduce levels of anxiety and allow people to feel more at ease هدوء / راحة.

Answer the following questions

1. The main idea of the passage is the.................

a) price of flowers **b) bad effects of flowers**

c) beauty of flowers **d) disadvantages of flowers**

2. The delicacy of the flowers petals can make a person remember fragility of ....

a) nature and life b) anxieties and stress c) colours and sizes d) garden and fields

3. Many flowers have natural scents that they .... when in bloom.

a) swallow **b) sink** **c) take** **d) emit**

4. Which sentence can summarize the passage?

a) Flowers are different colours and sizes

b) Flowers are considered a source of beauty.

c) Flowers beauty and the different uses of them

d) Flowers improve your quality of life.

5. How flowers improve your overall quality of life?

a) From their smell to their shape **b) From their taste and shape**

c) From their scent and material **d) From scent and taste.**

6. How can flowers motivate both people and thinkers?

a) Because of their taste. **b) Because of their scent.**

c) Because of their beauty. **d) Because of their material.**

7-The words “reduce” and “lessen” are……………

a) synonyms **b) antonyms** **c) homophones** **d) suffixes**

8-The word ……………. Means too many to be mentioned.

a) countless **b) optimisstic** **c) vivid** **d) scent**

9-We add the suffix……….to the word “beauty” to form an adjective…………..

a) –ness **b) -ful** **c) -tion** **d) -fy**

10-The underlined word “disperse” means…………

a) scatter **b) publish** **c) fix** **d) skip**

Translate the following into Arabic:

1-Health is a crown on the heads of healthy people that only the sick can see. So, make sure this crown remains on your head as long as possible.

……………………………………………………………………………………..

……………………………………………………………………………………..

Translate the following into English :

يجب أن تحافظ على نظافة مدينتك، وألا تلقي بفضلات الطعام في الشوارع، فهذا سوف يمنع انتشار الامراض المختلفة.

……………………………………………………………………………………..

……………………………………………………………………………………..

Write about 150 words on:

A famous Egyptian doctor

Unit 8

Robots

abroad	الخارج	event	حدث	problem	مشكه
advantage	ميزه	exactly	تماماً	progress	التقدم
disadvantage	عيب	fact	حقيقه-واقع	project	مشروع
although	بالرغم من	fortunately	ولـ حسن الحظ	question	سؤال
another	اخر	free time	وقت الفراغ	reason	سبب
answer	اجابة	homework	الواجبات المنزليه	robot	انسان آلي
anything	اي شئ	information	المعلومات	school	مدرسة
article	مقالة	journey	رحلة	shopping list	قائمة التسوق
both	كلا	map	خريطه	somewhere	مكان ما
century	القرن	memory	الذاكرة	stress	الاجهاد – التوتر
comments	تعليقات	minute	دقيقة	summary	موجز- ملخص
communication	الاتصالات	online	عبر الإنترنت	technology	التكنولوجيا
country	دولة	opinion	الرأي	the internet	الانترنت
distance	مسافة	people	الناس	today	اليوم
documentary	وثائقي	perhaps	ربما	vehicle	سيارة- مركبة
easily	بسهولة	petrol	البنزين	views	أراء
electric	يعمل بالكهرباء	philosopher	فليسوف	website	موقع
electricity	كهرباء	post	منشور	with	مع – بـ
engine	محرك	press	الصحافة	without	بدون
answer	يرد- يجيب	download	يحمل- ينزل	share	يشارك
appear	يظهر	drive	يقود	spend	يقضي
click	ينقر	leave	يترك- يغادر	talk	يتحدث
communicate	يتواصل	feel	يشعر	tell	يخبر
concentrate	يركز	fix	يصلح	use	يستخدم
cycle	يركب دراجة	guess	يخمن	understand	يفهم
improve	يحسن	want	يريد	write	يكتب
invent	يخترع	live	يعيش	please	من فضلك
lead	يؤدي (الي)	navigate	يتنقل/ يحدد سير	hybridize	يهجن- يمزج
beautiful	جميل	able	قادر علي	describe	يصف
different	مختلف	familiar	مألوف	important	هام
easy	سهل	fast	سريع	interested in	مهتم بـ
expensive	غالي- مكلف	great	عظيم-كبير	luxury	فاخر
quick	سريع	happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
technology	تكنولوجيا	text	نص	understand	يفهم
information	معلومات	app	تطبيق	smartphone	هاتف ذكي
helmet	خوذه	popular	محبوب	blog	مدونة
application	طلب توظيف	documentary	فيلم وثائقي	admit	يعترف
share	يشارك	personal	شخصي	collect	يجمع

Definitions

click	ينقر علي الماوس	to press a button on a computer mouse.
familiar	مألوف	well-known to you and easy to recognize
invention	اختراع	a useful machine, tool instrument etc. that has been invented

navigate	ينتقل	to find a way when you are travelling from one place to another.
vehicle	مركبة	a machine that takes people or things from one place to another.
GPS	نظام تحديد المواقع	abbreviation for Global Positioning System
the internet	الانترنت	allows people to share information and communicate with each other.
Hybrid vehicles	مركبات هجينة (تسير بالبنزين والكهرباء)	vehicles that use both petrol and electricity.
an app	تطبيق	application / software on your smartphone
do a quiz	يحل مسابقه معلومات	questions to find out how much you know
chat	يدردش	to communicate with other people online.
feed back	تغذية راجعة	information about how well or badly you did something.
translation	ترجمة	words changed into another language
find out	يكتشف	learn something that you didn't know before
go out	يخرج للنزهة	leave your home to do something fun with other people.
get around	يسافر- يتجول	travel from place to place.

-Write the names of the inventions next to the sentences:

GPS	Hybrid vehicles	the internet

1-………………this is the most useful invention if you need with your school work.
2-…………………this is the most useful invention if you don't know how to find a place.
3-…………………this invention uses both petrol and electricity to drive the engine.

find out	get around	go out

1-…………………..leave your home to do something fun with other people.
2-…………………learn something that you didn't know before.
3-……………………travel from place to place.

Antonyms

above	فوق	below	اسفل
popular	محبوب -مألوف	unpopular	غير محبوب
disappear	يختفي	appear	يظهر
turned on	يشعل (الجهاز الكهربي)	turned off	يطفئ (الجهاز الكهربي)
affect	يؤثر علي	Be affected by	يتأثر بـــ
end	يرسل	receive	يستقبل
close to	قريب من	far from/ remote	بعيد
easier	اسهل	more difficult/ harder	اكثر صعوبة
online	متصل بالنت	offline	غير متصل بالنت
download	ملف نازل من على النت/ينزيل ملف على الانترنت	upload	يرفع ملف/ملف مرفوع

Synonyms

advantages	مزايا	merits/upsides
consequences	نتائج	results
extreme	شديد	severe

extremist	متطرف	radical
familiar	مالوف	common
stressful	مجهد	exhausting/hard

Prepositions

communicate with	يتواصل مع	find out	يكتشف
agree with	يتفق مع	go down	تنخفض
change into/to	يتغير الي	go out	يخرج
compare … with	يقارن بـــ	interested in	مهتم بـــ
compare …to	يشبه …..	lead to	يقود الي
disagree with	يختلف مع	effect on	تأثير علي
depend on	يعتمد علي	think of/about	يفكر في
look after	يعتني بـــ	send to	يرسل الي
refer to	يشير الي	ride on	يركب علي
short for	اختصار لـــ	useful to	مفيد ل
suffer from	يعاني من	walk around	يتجول
walk into	يدخل الي	get around	يتجول
worry about	قلق علي	write down	يدون
familiar with	مالوف لدي	talk about	يتحدث عن
concentrate on	يركز علي	live without	يعيش بدون
connect to	يتصل ب	turn on	يشغل

give		do	
give directions	يعطي اتجاهات	do exercise	يؤدي تدريب
give some advice	يعطي بعض النصائح	do things	يقوم بعمل اشياء
give money	يعطي مال	do something faster	يفعل شيء اسرع
give hand	يساعد	do well	يؤدي جيدا
give an opinion	يعطي راي	do badly	يؤدي سيئا

cause	يسبب	a problemمشكلة/damage
discuss	يناقش	a problemمشكلة/consequencesنتائج
leave	يترك	a commentتعليق
find	يجد	an answer
make	يحقق	progress تقدم/a chart/ رسم sure

Prefixes

Dis-	تكون عكس (الكلمة)	disagree disadvantages dislike	لا يوافق عيوب لا يحب
un-	تكون عكس (الكلمة)	unhappy uncommon	غير سعيد غير مألوف

suffixes

-ary	تكون اسم او صفة	documentary	فيلم وثائقي
-cal	تكون صفة	historical	تاريخي
-ful	تكون صفة	stressful	مرهق

Expressions

on one hand	من ناحيه	have a terrible memory	لديهم ذاكرة رهيبة
on the other hand	ومن ناحية اخري	positive things	اشياء ايجابيه
new type of	نوع جديد من	go long distances	الذهاب مسافات طويلة
drop a stone into the river	إسقاط حجر في النهر	it's easy to	فمن السهل ان
for or against	مع او ضد	lead to a lot of stress	يؤدي الي الكثير من الاجهاد
for this reason	لهذا السبب	make things	يصنع الاشياء
cause a problem	يسبب مشكلة	do exercise	يقوم بعمل تمرينات
discuss consequences	يناقش النتائج	have an effect on	له تأثير علي
find an answer to	يجب حل لـــ	give direction	يعطي الاتجاهات
leave a comment	يترك تعليق	make progress	يحقق تقدم
get nervous	يتوتر - يتعصب	press a button	يضغط علي زر
lose interest in	يفقد اهتمامه ب	in conclusion	الخلاصه هي
start a communication	يبدأ حواره	I guess not	لا اعتقد ذلك
know how to	يعرف كيف	have the same opinion as you	لديه نفس الراي
make a difference to	يحسن	on their own	بمفردهم
personal details	تفاصيل شخصيه	put parts together	يجمع اشياء
stop people enjoying	يمنع الناس من الاستمتاع ب	the printing press	الصحافه المطبوعة
with a click of a button	يضغط زر	I would argue that	يمكنني ان اقول ان

Language Notes

Help

help to +inf يساعد ان	**help with +n يساعد في**
help +inf يساعد ان	**help in +v"ing" يساعد في**

- She helped me (in –with)my homework
- He helped me (in-with)doing my homework
- He helped her (to carry-carrying)the bags

Get

get nervous	**يتوتر**	**get lost**	**يضل الطريق**
get around	**يتجول**	**get together**	**يتقابل**

- When you see others are better than you , you may(give- get)nervous
- I want to get (around-together)the town
- I was in cairo but unfortunately I got (missing-lost)

Go

go abroad	**يسافر للخارج**	**go long distances**	**يذهب مسافات بعيده**
go down	**يقل**	**go online**	**يتصل بالانترنت**

- I hope that prices(go-come)down
- Give me the right address I want to(do-go)online

Derivatives

app=application	**تطبيق الكتروني**	**application**	**طلب التحاق**
application	**تطبيق عملي**	**apply for+شئ**	**يتقدم بطلب**
apply	**يطبق**	**apply to+شركه/شخص**	**يتقدم بطلب ل**
		apply to	**ينطبق علي**

خلي بالك ان كلمة appلا تستخدم الا مع التطبيق الكتروني

- The company rules apply (for- to)all employees

- He applied (to- **for**) the job
- His mobile has a lot of (Gps –**apps**)
- The (apply –**application**)should be handed in a week

Chat with/in /about

chat	يدردش/دردشه عبر الانترنت /بشكل ودي/	have a chat	يدردش
an online chat	دردشه على الانترنت	a brief/short chat /a little	دردشه قصيره

- You always waste your time chatting (about-**with**)your friend online
- Really it was a brief (**chat**-cheat)about our memories

Navigate

navigate	يحدد طريق او خط سير	navigation	ملاحه
navigate	يفهم	navigator	ضابط ملاحه
navigate	يبحر	sat nav	جهاز يتحول بالقمر الصناعي

- The sea was rough and it was not easy to (navigator-**navigate**)
- I could (navigation-**navigate**) what you want
- In the past , soldiers used stars to (navigation-**navigate**)
- This car has a sat (**nav**-navigation)

Familiar

familiar	معروف	unfamiliar	غير معروف
be familiar to	معروف ب	be familiar with	يكون على درايه ب
familiarity	معرفه/درايه	familiarize….with	يصبح على علم

- You should be familiar (by – **with**)all customs and traditions of your community
- You must be familiar (to-**with**)all modern cultures
- His (familiar-**familiarity**)with English is limited

Technology

technology(v)	تكنولوجيا	information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
technologist	خبير تكنولوجيا	advanced technology	التكنولوجيا المتطوره
technological	تكنولوجي	digital technology	التكنولوجيا الرقميه

- Modern(**technology**-technological)has invaded all fields
- Mr. Emad is a real (technology-**technologist**)

Link

Link….to/with	يربط ب	Link	علاقه
Link….together	يربط..معا	link	رابط على النت

- Good manners link all the members of the family (to-**together**)
- Could tell me the (lack-***link***)of the website

make /let مفعول inf	⟶ Active
be made /let to +inf	⟶ passive

- I made her (to write-**write**)the report
- She was made (**to write**-write)the report

معلومات خفيفه:

1- من الممكن ان نضع بعد اداة الاستفهام to+inf

- I don't know how (going-**to go**)to the station
- I'm confused , I can't decide what (doing –**to do**)

On(his)own	بنفسه	Of his own	ملكه

- She has a private car . it's (**of**-on)her own
- I can cook a meal(of-**on**)my own

So+صفه	Such+اسم/اسم موصوف

- اذا سبقت كلمة **hundred/thousand/million** برقم لا يتم وضع لها s
- Ten(**thousand**-thousands)birds died last year

بينما اذا جاء بعد التركيبات السابقة حرف جر يتم وضع s

- Ten (thousand-**thousands**)of people lived there

Position/location

position(v)	يضع في موضع محدد/ياخذ موضع محدد
position(n)	موضع محدد/مكانه/مكان في ملعب
positioning(adj)	تحديدي/محدد
location	موقع جغرافي/موقع تصوير

- GPS stands for global(position-**positioning** –location)system

journey	رحله بريه/رحله طويله	trip	رحله قصيره لغرض ما
voyage	رحله بحريه	flight	رحله جويه

- The (voyage-**journey**)was fantastic but one of the passengers was seasick

electric	كهربي اي يدور على/يصدر كهرباء	
electric car	-electric fan	-electric iron
electrical	له علاقه بالكهرباء	
electrical engineer	- electrical company	-electrical repairs

electricity	كهرباء	electrician	كهربائي
electronic	الكتروني	technician	فني

- I hope to(electric-**electrical**) engineer
- I have bought an (electrical-**electric**)car

board	لوحه/سبوره	board	عريض	broaden	يوسع
abroad	على متن	abroad	بالخارج	border	حد

- Reading can(**broaden**-broad)our minds
- He has lived (a board-**abroad**) for a long time

Means of Transport

وسائل المواصلات تاخذ **by** بشرط الا نسبق وسيلة المواصلات باي شئ

By bus **by** train **by** plane **by** ferry

ملحوظه خفيفه للطلبه الظريفه:

1- كلمة foot **on**

2-اذا سبقت وسيلة المواصلات ب **the -a/an** صفه ملكيه **(Ali's)** او كانت في شكل الجمع تاخذ **in** او **on**

(**In**) عادة مع وسيله ندخل داخلها

______**In** the car in a taxi

(**On** عادة مع وسيله نركب على متنها او ظهرها)

______**On** the bicycle **on** a ship

ولكن الكلمات الاتيه تاخذ **in** او **on** الاكثر شيوعا **on**

On……a train-a bus -an underground-a plane

لاحظ اننا نقول ride (on) a bike

click	صوت الماوس/يضغط/ضغطه	comment	يعلق/تعليق

invent	يخترع شئ مادي او معنوي	share	يشارك/مشاركه
quiz	اختبار/يستجوب	vehicle	مركبه/ناقل للاشياءالماديه و المعنويه
smart	ذكي/انيق		

- I use the you tube as a (car-**vehicle**)for my lessons
- The police will (chat-**quiz**)her son
- I need a low (app-**click**)to close the door

Use to - use for -use as

- **Use +object +to +inf** يستخدم
  -We use wood to make furniture.
- **Use +object + for+ (v-ing)** يستخدم
  -we use wood for making furniture.
- **Use as** يستخدم كـ
  -Wood is used as a fuel.

- **Object to n / (v-ing)** يعترض (فعل)
  -the committee strongly objected to the report's recommendations
- **Object (n)** شئ هدف (اسم)
  -Look, there's a strange object in the sky!

- **Learn-teach +(to+inf) or (how to +inf)** يتعلم – يعلم
  -She learns to cook.
  -She learns how to cook.

- **System** نظام عمل
  -The work system here is very strict.
- **Discipline** النظام- الانضباط
  -His management is marked with discipline.

- **Do better** يؤدي بشكل افضل
  -My brother has begun to do better at school.
- **Get better** تتحسن صحته
  -the doctor says she will get better soon.

Can=am,is,are able to +inf

can +inf -He can swim.	verb (able)	يستطيع
be able to +inf -He is able to swim.	**adj** (capable)	قادرعلي
be capable of +v+ing -He is capable of swimming.	**adj** (ability)	قادر علي
have the ability to+inf -He has the ability to swim.	**Noun**	لديه القدرة علي
have the ability of+ (v-ing) -He has the ability of swimming.	**Noun**	لديه القدرة علي

Listening 1

Ahmed: Well, the reason that we have the internet is so that people in different countries can talk to each other very easily and get answers to their questions very quickly. Although we need this fast and easy communication, it can lead to problems if people spend too much time talking online and don't work or study enough. I wouldn't say that the internet has caused a lot of problems, but I think it has caused some.

Mustafa: The problem with the internet is that it makes people feel like they aren't good enough. If you go online, you see all these photos of beautiful people on luxury holidays and you think 'Why isn't my life like that?' This makes some people really unhappy. Perhaps we should all concentrate on our own lives and our own friends and not use the internet anymore.

Listening 2

Amal: Technology is so useful when you're learning something, Hana! You can find the information you need really quickly. If you don't understand a word when you're reading a text, you can find the translation for it.

Hana: You're right, Amal, but does that really help you to learn? I think that if you learn something, you remember it and you can use it when you're talking or writing. Technology can't help you remember things or write texts.

Amal: Well, not exactly, but if you use a language app, for example, you can do quizzes about new words to help you remember them. And there are apps that give you feedback on your writing so you can do it better next time.

Hana: I understand what you're saying. That's just not the way I learn. I prefer using a pen and paper and making notes in my notebook. I don't need a smartphone.

Amal: That's OK. Everyone's different. For me, the best thing about using technology to learn is that you can chat to people from all over the world online. That's really nice when you're doing your homework on your own. If you have questions, they'll help you.

-Read three online posts about technology:

Reading 1

The internet is the best invention that we have today. You can find information about anything you're interested in. it's really useful if you need to find out something for a school project, for example. I'd never be able to do my homework without it. The internet also makes life easier in your free time. You can buy anything you want online with a click of a button. You can also communicate with your friends easily, even if they live abroad.

Reading 2

In my opinion, GPS (Global Positioning System) is the best invention.
GPS helps you to navigate your journey from one place to another. You can use it when you visit a town that you aren't familiar with. In the past, people needed maps to get around, but GPS is more useful because it just tells you what to do. If you don't know how to get somewhere, the technology will tell you exactly where to go.

Reading 3

Most cars, buses and other vehicles need petrol, but petrol is becoming more expensive. What would we do if we didn't have petrol? Fortunately, we now have hybrid vehicles. Hyprid vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine. for this reason, the vehicles uses a lot less petrol. There are also cars that are only electric.

At the moment, they cannot **go long distances**, although they are **useful to** travel short distances, like to school or to the shops.

Video script

Will people need to learn foreign languages in the future? Or will technology **speak** them **for** us? Some people think that if **apps** and **translation** software continue to improve over the next ten to twenty years, language lessons will become a **thing** of the past. But can an app or a **piece** of **software** really communicate **like** a person can?

They can definitely **translate words**, or even whole sentences, **from** one language **to another**. But they can't **smile** at the person you're **talking to** and show them that you really **mean** what you're saying.

When you speak in a foreign language, you speak to **another human** being and human beings find it difficult to become **friends** with smartphones or computers – we are **programmed** to prefer other human beings. That's why we can feel sure that learning languages still has a future.

- an invention I have chosen the robot as the best invention:

A **robot** is a machine that is controlled by a computer. Robots can do some of the things that people can do, like cleaning or **putting parts together** in a car factory. We have had **robots** for a long time, but today can do a lot more things than robots could do in the past. In my opinion, the robot is the best invention, **because** it **makes** people's **lives easier** and it helps companies **to save** money when they **make things** like cars.

Exercises

-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- My dad uses …………if he doesn't know which road to take.
a-vehicle **b-app** **c-translation** **d-GPS**

2- GPS is a short for Global……….System.
a-Population **b-Positioning** **c-Press** **d-Philosophy**

3- Not everything in modern technology is good. There're surely some…………
a-advantages **b-disadvantages** **c-merits** **d-upside**

4- The students answered all the questions in the ……………and then checked their scores.
a-feedback **b-invention** **c-quiz** **d-computer**

5- Abeer enjoys……..with her online friends in her free time.
a-cycling **b-printing** **c-benefiting** **d-chatting**

6- My two daughters…….some qualities. They both are intelligent, and helpful.
a-share **b-cycle** **c-communicate** **d-save**

7- Healthy food, doing sport and getting enough sleep……….to enjoying good health.
a-annoy **b-improve** **c-lead** **d-appear**

8- I………..this video from the Egyptian Knowledge bank.
a-uploaded **b-posted** **c-downloaded** **d-clicked**

9- At weekends, my friends and……….have fun.
a-benefit from **b-find out** **c-go out** **d-write down**

10- Google play is full of useful………..
a-feedback **b-viruses** **c-apps** **d-GPS**

11- In the future, we will have the………to travel to space on our holidays.
a-technology **b-invention** **c-internet** **d-robot**

12- It's very easy to….around in that city because the public transport is cheap and efficient.
a-get **b-find** **c-stay** **d-say**
13- Did Ahmed leave the exam room? B:I ………..not
a-affect **b-crash** **c-do** **d-guess**
14- I like reading ……posts about the advantages of new technology on different websites.
a-inline **b-online** **c-outline** **d-offline**
15- I read an essay about the advantages and disadvantages of …..technology in the house.
a-making **b-doing** **c-meeting** **d-having**
16- We had a fruitful discussion …… how technology can improve learning.
a-on **b-in** **c-at** **d-for**
17- He later realized the ……………of his bad deeds.
a-sequence **b-consequences** **c-squires** **d-squads**
18- People have different views……………..to technology.
a-related **b-relating** **c-relation** **d-relationship**
19- The internet is the most useful invention if you need help …….your schoolwork.
a-at **b-about** **c-for** **d-with**
20- Hybrid vehicles use ……….petrol and electricity to drive the engine.
a-either **b-neither** **c-each** **d-both**
21- You can find information about anything you're ………….in.
a-interested **b-fond** **c-excited** **d-interesting**
22- I………never be able to do my homework without the internet.
a-had **b-would** **c-did** **d-could**
23- By just a few ………on the mouse you can buy what you want.
a-clocks **b-clicks** **c-cloaks** **d-clauses**
24- To operate this machine just press this…………..
a-desk **b-button** **c-patron** **d-bitty**
25- We can also…………with your friends easily through the internet.
a-contact **b-communicate** **c-connect** **d-touch**
26- GPS stands for Global …………System.
a-Positioning **b-Positioned** **c-Positional** **d-Positions**
27- The Chinese were the first to ………the invention of papyrus.
a-do **b-make** **c-invite** **d-give**
28- What qualities should you have to ………a good inventor?
a-make **b-be** **c-do** **d-invent**
29- GPS helps you to………your journey from one place to another.
a-navigate **b-investigate** **c-magistrate** **d-state**
30- You can go from place to ……….places easily by using GPS?
a-other **b-another** **c-other** **d-either**
31- When he moved to his new neighborhood, he wasn't………with this area.
a-famous **b-known** **c-familiar** **d-shown**
32- Some tourists use maps in Cairo to get ………
a-in **b-round** **c-around** **d-random**
33- Most ……….need fuel to run.
a-vehicles **b-carts** **c-carriages** **d-horses**
34- …………vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine.
a-Hybrid **b-Hybrid** **c-Navigate** **d-Travel**

35- in some cars…………is needed to drive the engine.
a-electric b-electrical c-electricity d-electronics

36- People will use more ………cars in the near future.
a-electric b-electrical c-electricity d-electronics

37- We can see them in the ……………
a-distant b-distance c-destination d-destiny

38- Something that is well-known to you and easy to recognize is ………
a-fabulous b-knowing c-familiar d-shown

39- ………..is to find a way when you are travelling from one place to another.
a-Sail b-Walk c-Navigate d-Travel

40- He was asked to quit as he wasn't familiar ……..the team member.
a-in b-at c-of d-with

41- I have chosen the robot/………the best inventions.
a-like b-as c-such as d-similar

42- A robot is a ………that is controlled by a computer.
a-tool b-machine c-appliance d-advice

43- They left home to ………something fun with other people.
a-make b-do c-give d-have

44- I always………..fun with other people.
a-make b-do c-have d-give

45- My friend has installed an ………………..at his home recently.
a-air conditioning b-air conditioner c-air condition d-condition

46- Robots can………….. a lot of things that can help us in our daily life .
a-do b-make c-give d-take

47- Robots help many companies ……….. a lot of money .
a-safe b-save c- safety d- safely

48- You should make a good …………
a-choose b-shoes c-choice d-chose

49- All what he says to me is ………true.
a-usual b-usually c-unusual d-visual

50- You need some help……….your work.
a-in b-with c-on d-at

51- When I need something concerning my work, I …………online
a-look b-find c-research d-serve

52- You should have a good………to get through the final exam.
a-degree b-grade c-grid d-label

53- He was praised for the great project he had ………
a-made b-done c-given d-taken

54- You can find a lot of information…………the internet.
a-on b-at c-of d-with

55- What would you do if you couldn't use the internet………again?
a-never b-ever c-every d-over

56- Using the internet sometimes…………..problems.
a-do b-make c-causes d-finds

57- His illness is a direct……….of drinking polluted water.
a-cause b-result c-reason d-justification

Translate into Arabic:

-Some people think that if apps and translation software continue to improve ,language lessons will become a thing of the past.

....☺
....

-the best thing about using technology to learn is that you can chat to people from all over the world online.

....☺
....

Translate into English:

-هناك تطبيقات تعطيك ملاحظات (تغذية راجعه علي كتاباتك حتي تتمكن من القيام بذلك بشكل افضل في المرة القادمة)

☺..
....

لـــــــــ ******** If ******** و

If

If = in case = provided = provided that , بشرط، فى حالة

If you are careful , I will give you my car (in case)
✈In case you are careful , I will give you my car

If = With , by , in case of + v – ing

- (In case – **In case of**) playing well, we will win.
- (In – **In case of**) the rain, we won't go out.
- If we study hard, we will succeed. (**By**)
- **By studying hard, we will succeed.**

If + not = unless = except if إذا لم

- (Unless – **If**) he doesn't get up early , he will miss the bus .

ركز : Unless لابد أن تأتى بعدها إثبات أى إذا وجدنا نفى نختار If وإذا وجدنا اثبات فإن المعنى هو الفارق مثل

- (If – **Unless**) he is careful , he will make a mistake .
- (**If** – Unless) he is careful , he won't make a mistake .

Unless = without /bufor + v ----ing / n

- (**without** – unless) planning well , the country will not make progress .
- (Without – **In case of**) studying well , you will pass the exam .

If it weren't for/without + v ----ing / n ➡ would + inf.

If it hadn't been for/without + v ---ing / n ➡ would have + p.p.

- If it hadn't been for Ali , we wouldn't (solve / **have solved**) the problem .

If it (hadn't been – **weren't**) for Mona , we would stay at home

☒ **If + جملة = with – by – in case of + v – ing / n فى حالة**

☒ Unless + جملة = without , But for + v-ing / n بدون / لولا

- (***If*** – Unless) he is intelligent , he will solve the problem .
- (If – ***In case of***) coming early , I'll let him in .
- (In case of – ***without***) blood banks , a lot of people would die .

If zero مضارع بسيط ⟶ مضارع بسيط

- عندما نتحدث عن حقائق علمية خاصة بالطبيعة أو حقائق ثابتة " عادات "

- If we (***heat*** – heated) iron , it expands .

If water (heats – ***is heated***) , it turns into vapour . يمكن أن يكون مبنى للمجهول

- If the tree (***is*** – was) deciduous , it loses its leaves .
- If the bark of the tree is destroyed , the tree (***dies*** – would die)
- If there is not much rain in a year, the rings in a tree were close together . (**are**)
- If you'll mix red and white , you get pink . (**mix**)

Water evaporates if (**heated** – is heated)

الحالة  الأولى

If مضارع بسيط ⟶ will , can , may/must ,have to ,has to +inf
If مضارع بسيط ⟶ should /might -would rather 'd better+ inf .
If مضارع بسيط ⟶ اقتراح – أمر It's + adj.

- **وتعبر الحالة الأولى لـ If عن احتمال / تنبؤ أو توقع مستقبلى .**

- If you study hard , you (***will*** – would) pass the exam .
- If he (***plays*** – played) well , he will win .
- If he comes early tomorrow , I (would – ***will***) receive him .
- If he invites you , (***will you*** – you will) go ?
- What (***will you*** – you will) do if he comes now ?
- If she (***comes*** – came) , please , go out .
- If you pick those apples now , they (don't – ***won't***) taste very sweet .
- If this tree has deep roots , it (doesn't – ***won't***) fall over in strong winds .
- If you (looked – ***look***) at the sun , you will damage your sight .
- If there were clouds in the sky tonight, you will not be able to see the moon.(**are**)
- If you watched the sky on a clear night , you can see stars and planets.(**watch**)
- If it's warm and sunny tomorrow , I (***will*** – would) go swimming .

If1 مضارع بسيط / أى مضارع will + inf

- If you (**are** – were) wearing glasses, you will protect your eyes.

و تدل الحالة الأولى على التنبؤ – الوعد – التهديد – النصح – الأمر – الأذن

- If you are ill, you (can – **should**) see a doctor .
- If you feel tired, you (**can** – may – must – will) go home .

ملاحظات

1- يمكن أن نستخدم (When) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الصفرية.

- If / When I feel tired, I go to bed early.
- When it is warm, I go for a walk every day.
- Where do you go if / when you are on holiday?

2- الروابط الآتية تستخدم بدلا من (If) في الحالة الأولى. و يجوز الحالات الاخرى

Provided that / On condition that / Providing / As long as / So long as

- You can borrow my pen **if** / **provided that** / **on condition that** / **as long as** you give it back.
- Provided that If you send your order by fax, we will deliver the goods immediately.
- As long as you invite me for lunch, I will help you with your homework.

3- تُحذف (If) في الحالة الأولى و نبدأ بالفعل (Should).

- **If** he **has** enough time, he will watch the football match.
- **Should** he **have** enough time, he will watch the football match.

4- يمكن أن نستخدم (و إلا and / or / or else / otherwise) بدلا من (If) في الحالـــة الأولى.

- You've got to start studying, **or else** you'll fail all those exams.
- We'd better send it by express mail**, otherwise** it'll take days.

5- يمكن أن نستخدم (تحسبا لـــــ in case) بدلا من (If) في الحالـــة الأولى لتعبر عما ينبغي أن نفعله لنستعد لموقف محتمل في المستقبل.

- I'll draw a map for you **in case** you can't find our house.
- I don't want to go out tonight **in case** my friend phones.
- Shall I keep some chicken salad for your brother **in case** he's hungry when he gets here?
- In case I forget later, here are the keys to the garage.

- لاحظ الفارق في المعنى بين (تحسبا لـــــ in case) و (If) في الأمثلة التالية.

- Let's take our swimsuits **in case** there's a pool at the hotel.
  (We don't know if there is a pool there.)
- Let's take our swimsuits **if** there's a pool in the hotel.
  (We will wait until we know about the pool before we decide.)

جمل محلولة للمتفوقين غلسة خالص

1- if you drive dangerously fast , you …………an accident
a- can have *b-have* *c)have had* *d)are having*

2- it is fact that one …………..if one has nothing to do
a)bores *b)will bore* *c)is bored* *d)would bore*

3- If you have a credit card , you ……………things online
a)are buying *b)buy* *c)can buy* *d)will buy*

4- I'm never late for school , if any is ever late , they ……….them
a)punish *b)will punish* *c)punishes* *d)are punished*

5- He …………his mind if you insist on it
a)might change *b)will have changed* *c)changes* *d)is changed*

6- If he dies , it …………..a great loss
a)is *b)will be* *c)was* *d)causes*

7- When a great person dies , it …………….a great loss to his country
a)is *b)will be* *c)was* *d)has been*

8- If you plant a tree , it …………..the world to breathe
a)help *b)helps* *c)will help* *d)would help*

9- If you plant a tree , it ……….lovely in a few years
a)look *b)looks* *c)will look* *d)would look*

10 – if you practise a sport , you ………in the sports team
a)are getting *b)will get* *c)get* *d)would get*

10 – if you practise a sport , you ………better at it
a)are getting *b)will get* *c)get* *d)would get*

Choose the correct answer

1- If we leave water in the sun,…..?

a)it doesn't cool b)it isn't cooled c)does it cool d)did it cool

2- what………..if ice is heated?

a)happens b)is happened c)does it happen d)is it happened

3- eggs ……….hard if they are boiled

a)is become b)becomes c)are become d)become

4- where……when you visit paris?

a)you stay b)you stayed c)do you stay d)did you stay

5- if water freezes ,it………..to ice

a)will turn b)would turn c)turns d)would have turned

6- if I spend too long on the computer , I usually ……….a headache

a)will get b)would get c)would have d)get

7- if she……hard, she will win next week's race

a)train b)trains c)trained d)had trained

8- what……….if you're bitten by a snake?

a)you will do b)you would do c)will you do d)would you do

9- if you are hungry ,………. another sandwich

a)will take b)take c)don't take d)would take

10- if my sister has a baby boy , she……….him Ahmed

a)calls b)would call c)will call d)would have called

11- if you add six to seven, you……..fourteen

a)would get b)might get c)get d)got

12- if you………the bell before Friday , we will take the computer back

a)paid b)don't pay c)didn't pay d)hadn't paid

13- If the bark of a tree is badly damaged, the tree ………………………

a) 'll die b) had died c) died d) dies

14- If a tree has deep roots, it ……… over in strong winds.

a) will fall b) falls c) won't fall d) don't fall

15- If water freezes, it ……… into ice.

a) 'll turn b) turns c) turned d) 'd turn

16- If water is heated to 100C, it …………………..

a) boiling b) will boil c) boils d) is boiled

17- If Hassan ………… the competition, he'll win.

a) had entered b) enters c) entered d) 'll enter

18- If scientists study the rings of trees, they …out information about our climate in the past.

a) finds b) found c) can find d) finding

19- Metals …….. if they are heated.

a) will expand b) expand c) would expand d) are expanded

20- ………water evaporate if it is heated?

a) Does b) Will c) Would d) Did

الحالة الثانية

If ماضى بسيط → would , might ,could + inf.

ملحوظة : يمكن استخدام might + inf فى الحالة الأولى أو الثانية و الثانية أفضل .

- If I played well , I (will – ***would***) win .

- If he (has – ***had***) money , he would lend me some .
- (***Would you*** – You would) go if he invited you ?
- If he (***studied*** – studies) hard , he would succeed .
- If I (am – ***were***) rich , I would help the poor .
- **تستخدم were بدلاً من was تعبيراً عن الاستحالة .**
- If I (am – ***were***) a bird , I would fly .

بداية If ـــــــــ ل

If & were

- **إذا كان فى الجملة were فإننا نقوم بحركة المقص :**
- If I were rich , I would help the needy .
  - Were I rich , I would help the needy .
- If I played well , I would win . (**were**)
- **فى حالة عدم وجود were فى الجملة الأساسية فاعل Were to + inf**
- Were I to play well , I would win .

Were فاعل + to+inf /**اسم – ضمير – صفة** ——— **would + inf**

Were I Ali , I will see the doctor . (would)

- (***Were*** – If) I to study hard , I would pass the exam .

If / Had: ولا تحل محل if إلا إذا كانت فعل أساسى مثل

- If I had a car , I would lend it to you .
  Had I a car , I would lend it to you .
- **Had فاعل + اسم would + inf.**
- (***Had*** – were) I money , I would lend you some .
- (***Were*** – Had) I a doctor , I would help you .

If & should وهو بديل If الحالة الأولى والثانية

Should فاعل → **+inf** ——— **Would/will + inf**

- Should I play , I (***will win*** – would have won) the match .
- Should I play , I (***would win*** – will have won) the match .
- (***Should*** – Could) I make a plan , I will carry it out .
- و تدل الحالة الثانية على 1) النصح ☐ 2) الاستحالة ☐ 3) عكس الواقع ☐
- If I am you, I would see the doctor " **were** "
- If I (was – **were**) a bird, I would fly . استحالة
- If I (was – **were**) rich, I would help the poor . عكس الواقع و يمكن هنا was أيضا
- **- يمكن أن نستخدم (Suppose / Supposing (that) / Imagine (that)) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الثانية.**
- **- Suppose / Supposing / Imagine** (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

الحالة If الثالثة

If ماضى تام → **would have + p.p.**

- If he had played well , he would (win – ***have won***)
- If he (had – ***had had***) money , he would have built a charity .
- If he (worked – ***had worked***) hard , he would have earned money .

- If he (***earned*** – had earned) money , he would have a villa .

بدائـــــــل If

If & Had

- وتكون بحركة المقص :

- If I had done the homework , my teacher **would have been** happy .
  Had I done the homework , my teacher would have been happy .
- **كيف نفرق بين had فى الحالة الثانية أو الثالثة :**

  - **Had فاعل + اسم (n) → would + inf .**
  - **Had فاعل + p.p. → would have + p.p.**

- Had I money , I would (***buy*** – have bought) a car .
- Had I played well , I would (win – ***have won***)

  - **If it weren't for + v-ing / n → would + inf لولا**
  - **If it hadn't been for + v-ing / n → would have + p.p لولا**

- If it weren't for Ali , we wouldn't (***solve*** – haven't solved) the problem .
- If it (weren't – ***hadn't***) been for his intelligence , he couldn't have solved the problem .

و تدل الحالة الثالثة على عكس الواقع فى الماضى . ☐

If he played well yesterday, he would have won. " had played "

في مختصر

If 1	مضارع بسيط	,	will + inf	→	مستقبل
If 2	ماضى بسيط	,	would + inf	→	مضارع
If 3	ماضى تام	,	would have + inf	→	ماضى

- If he comes early tomorrow, I would receive him. (**will**)
- If he is with us now, I would a pologize to him. (**were**)
- If he studied well last year, he would have passed. (**had studied**)

ماذا أختار بعد **but**

If 1	**but + won't / can't**
If 2	**but + can't / don't / (be) not**
If 3	**but + didn't + inf**

- If I were a doctor, I would help the poor but I (didn't – won't – **am not**)
- If I had gone there, I would have met him but I (hadn't – can't – **didn't**)

اذا كان فعل الشرط منفى فان الفعل بعد but مثبت و العكس ▫

- If I had not gone to Alex , I would have met him but I (hadn't – can't – **did**)= **went**

فى الاختيارى لا تضع الكلمة الدالة فى الاعتبار فى المقام الأول إنما توافق الأفعال.

- If he (**came** – comes – had come) early tomorrow, I would receive him.
- If it (**rains** – rained), I won't go out today.

و لكن الدقة قد تأتى فى الشواذ و هو دمج حالتين مع بعض مثل :-

- If had put a plan for the project, it would become successful now.
  أى لو أنه وضع الخطة فى الماضى لنجح المشروع الآن . ☐
- If he had won the prize last month, he would be rich now .
  أى لو أنه فاز بالجائزة الشهر الماضى لكان غنيا الآن أى الغنى استمر فى الماضى حتى الحاضر .

Practice 2

1- I'd have gone if it had been early, but it ……… very late indeed.
A) is b) isn't c) had been d) was
2- If the Sun …….. us heat and light, there would be no life on Earth.
A) doesn't give b) won't give c) didn't give d) hadn't given
3- I ……… study hard if I had an exam.
A) should b) have to c) would d) can
4- If he hadn't looked at the sun, he ……… problems with his eyes.
A) wouldn't have b) didn't have c) hadn't had d) would have had
5- What would you do if you ……… in my position?
A) are b) had been c) were d) have been
6- If it …….. so heavily, we wouldn't have had floods.
A) doesn't rain b) wasn't raining c) didn't rain d) hadn't rained
7- If ……… late for school, I take a taxi.
A) I'm b) I was c) I will be d) I were
8- I'd help if I ………………….
A) ask b) asked c) have asked d) were asked
9- If he ……… late again, never let him in.
A) came b) had come c) comes d) will come
10- What ……… if you had enough money?
a) you would do b) would you do c) would you have done d) you would have done
11- If I ……… in your position, I would accept the offer.
a) will be b) were c) am d) had been
12- If you hadn't left earlier, you ……… your train.
a) would have missed b) will miss c) would miss d) wouldn't have missed
13- If you ……… well, you wouldn't win the race.
a) didn't practice b) don't practice c) practised d) practise

-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- If you give me your email address, I ………you the information this evening.
a-will send b-would send c-could send d- would have sent
2- I'll help you to fix your computer if you …………me what's wrong with it.
a-tell b-will tell c-told d-would tell
3- Be careful with that vase. If you ………….it, it would break into small pieces.
a-drop b-dropped c-will drop d-would drop
4- If I ………..that app on my phone, it would be easy to find places.
a-use b-uses c-used d-had used
5- If I had to get around without a car or bike, it………….really difficult.
a-will be b-would be c-can be d-may be
6- If Samia……….the entrance test, she will go to Cairo University next year.
a-would pass b-will pass c-passes d-passed
7- If Magda………..a language course, she would be able to speak to foreigners.
a-does b-will do c-did d-would do
8- I wouldn't be able to talk to my grandparents so often if we……….the internet at home.
a-don't have b-didn't have c-won't have d-can't have
9- What would you do if your friend……….an accident?
a-have b-would have c-has d-had
10- If I ………….. internet access at home, I would send my email?
a-has b-have c-had d-had had

11- If you heat ice, it………….
a-will melt b-would melt c-melts d-would have melt

12- If she……..hard, she will pass the test
a-worked b-had worked c-is worked d-works

13- I………the football match if they showed it on television.
a-watch b-will watch c-would watch d-can watch

14- If I …………….you, I'd listen to the weather forecast before going for a picnic.
a-would be b-were c-had been d-was being

15- If I were you ,I …………this useful book.
a-will read b-would read c-might have read d-read

16- If Egypt……….a lot of rain, it might have a lot more trees.
a-had b-had had c-will have d-was having

17- If I were rich…………..a palace.
a-will build b-would have built c-would build d-can build

18- If a tree has deep roots, it…………over in strong winds.
a-doesn't fall b-won't fall c-didn't fall d-wouldn't fall

19- If you pick those apples now, they……………very sweet
a-don't taste b-won't taste c-didn't taste d-hadn't taste

20- I ………..a fever if I ever eat salted fish.
a-will get b-am getting c-would get d-get

21- If you need any help ,just………..me
a-would contact b-will contact c-contact d-can contact

22- If I have an illness, I usually…………..to the doctor.
a-would go b-am going c-go d-will go

23- If the moon passes between the sun and the earth , there ……a solar eclipse.
a-were b-will be c-is d-would be

24- You……….study hard if you want to pass your test.
a-will b-have c-must d-would

25- People………..if they are deprived of oxygen.
a-would have died b-would die c-will die d-die

26- Don't make deliberate fouls again……….. I will send you off
a-if b-unless c-otherwise d-except if

27- If metals…………….., they expand.
a-they heated b-are heated c-have heated d-heated

28- If we can get their support, we……….
a-would succeed b-will succeed c-succeeded d-succeed

29- If the Sun …….. us heat and light, there would be no life on Earth.
A) doesn't give b) won't give c) didn't give d) hadn't given

30- I ……… study hard if I had an exam.
A) should b) have to c) would d) can

31- If he hadn't looked at the sun, he ……… problems with his eyes.
A) wouldn't have had b) didn't have c) hadn't had d) would have had

32- What would you do if you ……… in my position?
A) are b) had been c) were d) have been

33- If it …….. so heavily, we wouldn't have had floods.
A) doesn't rain b) wasn't raining c) didn't rain d) hadn't rained

34- I'd help if I ………………….
A) ask **b) asked** **c) have asked** **d) were asked**
35- What ……… if you had enough money?
a) you would do **b) would you do** **c) would you have done** **d) you would have done**
36- If I ……… in your position, I would accept the offer.
a) will be **b) were** **c) am** **d) had been**
37- If you hadn't left earlier, you ……… your train.
a) would have missed **b) will miss** **c) would miss** **d) wouldn't have missed**
38- If you ……… well, you wouldn't win the race.
a) didn't practice **b) don't practice** **c) practised** **d) practise**
39- She would have bought that skirt if she ……… enough money.
a) has **b) had had** **c) has had** **d) had**
40- What……..you do if you win the money?
a-would **b-do** **c-will** **d-could**
41- You won't enter the hall………you arrive there early.
a-provided **b-unless** **c-without** **d-if**
42- Plants……..if they don't get any water.
a-will die **b-would die** **c-going to die** **d-die**
43- You……….do exercise if you don't want to put on weight.
a-would **b-will** **c-should** **d-ought**
44- If it rains tomorrow, we………..go to the park.
a-wouldn't **b-won't** **c-don't** **d-haven't**
45- Things………..to the ground if you drop them.
a-would fall **b-fall** **c-will fall** **d-falls**
46- If we plant trees, then we………cleaner air.
a-will be having **b-have** **c-would have** **d-will have**
47- When I work a lot in the garden, I ……….no energy at night.
a-have **b-had** **c-has** **d-will have**
48- When molten glass cools, it………
a-is hardened **b-hardened** **c-hardens** **d-will harden**
49- If a tree becomes weak, it…………its leaves.
a-lost **b-is losing** **c-has lost** **d-loses**
50- If you strip the bark off a tree, it……………
a-died **b-is dying** **c-die** **d-will die**

Exam on unit 8

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:

1-Having too many social network accounts can……. To a lot of stress.
a-cause **b-reason** **c-lead** **d-feedback**
2-Secondary school students will take the second term exams on their ………..tablets.
a-written **b-traditional** **c-smart** **d-social**
3-The teacher asked us to read the text and make………
a-research **b-surveys** **c-comments** **d-jobs**
4-Modern…………like mobiles and other devices have made life easier.
a-post **b-message** **c-technology** **d-business**
5-I have a……….on the internet where I write about my opinions and activities.
a-media **b-blog** **c-form** **d-survey**

6-My………form was sent by e-mail to the company.
a-comment b-communication c-application d-development
7-Facebook is one of the most………..social networking sites
a-complex b-complicated c-printed d-popular
8-A…….is sometimes you wear on your head to protect it in case you have an accident.
a-cap b-helmet c-hat d-turban
9-The……….with the internet is that some of the information on it isn't true.
a-advantage b-pros c-disadvantage d-benefit
10-The car can find the place you want to get to and then…….your journey to it.
a-navigate b-connect c-contact d-lead
11-On the………hand, technology usually offers some advantages.
a-another b-others c-other d-else
12-You can buy anything you want online with a ………of a button.
a-kick b-hit c-click d-check
13-…………working hard, you won't pass the exam.
a-If b-Unless c-Without d-While
14-If she…….the questions carefully, she would get high marks.
a-read b-reads c-has read d-had read
15-…………..you have a car, it's difficult to get there.
a-If b-Unless c-Without d-Inn case of
16-If I won a lot of money, I ……..an electric car.
a-buy b-bought c-will buy d-would buy

2-Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

William Shakespeare is probably the greatest poet and playwright ever to have lived. He is now an irrespirable part of not only British literature. But of world literature as well. Shakespeare was born in 1564 in a region called Avon. Not much is known about what his youth was like. A t the age of 18, he married Anne Hathaway, who was 8 years older than him, and they later had three children together.

Shakespeare is best known for his work in plays and poetry. Some of his most famous pieces include King Lear, the Tempest, Romeo and Juliet, Hamlet, Julius Caesar; and Othello. Of course, there are many other plays that are read and loved today.

Not only did Shakespeare contribute greatly to literature, he also played a significant role in shaping the English language. The words and expressions that he used in his works are still quoted by many people today. Such was his significance to England that one historian once said that he would sooner give up India than give up Shakespeare.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Shakespeare wrote……..
a-plays and films b-poems and articles
c-plays and poems d-songs and child literature
2-The best title for this passage would be……..
a-William Shakespeare b-The plays of Shakespeare
c-The poems of Shakespeare d-William and Anne Shakespeare
3-Accourding the passage…………
a-Shakespeare was 8 years younger than Anne
b-Shakespeare was 8 years older than Anne
c-Shakespeare and Anne had 3 children

d-much is known about Shakespeare's childhood

4-A historian said he would rather give up India before giving up Shakespeare because he thought………..

a-he liked Shakespeare and India **b-he didn't like Shakespeare or India**

c- India wasn't that important to him

d-Shakespeare was a very important person to England

B:Answer the following questions:

5-Why do you think Shakespeare married a woman who is older than him? Do you think it is common for men in Egypt to do so?

6-What do you think made Shakespeare a great playwright? Mention TWO reasons.

7-Who do you think the greatest Arab writer?

4-A:Translate into Arabic:

-It is known that the wrong usage of internet websites and social wastes time, effort and destroys health. It is a must to limit the amount of time you spend online.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………………………

B:Translate into English:

-الروبوت هو الجهاز الذي يتم التحم فيه بواسطة جهاز الكمبيوتر، فإنه يمكن توفير الوقت والقيام بالعديد من المهام التي يقوم بها الانسان.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………………………

5)Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic : (6M)

Educational tablet and the enjoyment of learning

التابلت التعليمي والتمتع بالتعلم

Have you ever thought that learning will be enjoyable one day? I think that most older generations never thought of this idea. To them, learning was a large book, heaps اكوام of paper and long hours of study and suffering. However, modern technology has made learning a real fun. How has this happened? The answer to this question is very easy. It is the educational tablet. The educational tablet is really a revolution in the educational field. It provides good learning materials supported by different teaching aids. On my tablet, I can easily search for the information I need. The internet provides everything I may
need in various forms. I can choose the best source of information that is trustworthy and up-to-date. On the tablet, I can download drawings and videos that help me learn better. These things make learning closer to real life and consequently, more effective. I no longer have to depend on teachers only as sources of information. The role of the teacher will continue to be very important, but the tablet will help them provide better learning for their students.

I can write and draw on my tablet. That saves me paper and pens, which makes the learning process less costly. My tablet has replaced my schoolbag and my bookshelves.

I really can't do without my tablet. It is my book, notebooks and pens. As an interactive device, it helps me learn better and keep me in touch with everything new in the world.

Notes

Unit 9 A good education

educate	يربي يعلم-	repetition	تكرار	creativity	ابتكار إبداع-
education	تعليم	author	مؤلف	creative	مبتكر مبدع-
educated	متعلم	orphan	يتيم	innovation	بتكار إبداع-
wealthy	ثري	so-called	مزعوم مَدعو-	innovative	مبتكر مبدع-
wealth	ثروة	subject	موضوع	issue	قضية مسألة-
unkind	قاسي	bridge	جسر	culture	ثقافة
kindness	العطف	knowledge	المعرفة	cultural	ثقافي
cruel	قاسي	keen	متحمس	element	عنصر
cruelty	قسوة	skill	مهارة	essential	ضروري
send away	يطرد	skilful	ماهر	role	دور
dismiss	يطرد	practise	يتدرب يمارس-	provide	يوفر يزود-
owner	صاحب مالك-	practical	عملي	technical	تقني فني-
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	ability	قدرة	financial	مالي
governess	مربية	equipment	معدات	support	دعم تشجيع يؤيد- -
employ	يوظف يشغل-	experiment	تجربة علمية	focus on	يركز علي
housekeeper	مديرة المنزل	text	نص	inquiry	استفسار
servant	خادم	art	الفن	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
secret	سر	home-school	يعلم شخص في البيت	rather than	بدلا من
instead of	بدلا من	wherever	أينما : في أي مكان	feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
extra	إضافي	artist	فنان	ongoing	مستمر، متواصل
timetable	جدول مواعيد	musician	عازف موسيقي	evaluation	تقييم الأداء
contact	يتصل اتصال-	expert	خبير	rely on	يعتمد علي
friendship	الصداقة	experience	خبرة	depend on	يعتمد علي
head teacher	معلم أول	experienced	متمرس ذو خبرة	self-reliance	الاعتماد علي النفس
advertise	يعلن عن	problem solver	حلال المشاكل	fail	يفشل
advertisement	إعلان	inventor	مخترع	failure	الفشل
earn	يكسب يربح-	seek	يسعي يرغب-	consider	يعتبر
previous	سابق سالف-	partner	شريك	success	النجاح
continue	يستمر يواصل-	partnership	شراكة	appreciate	يق در يفهم-
go on	يستمر يواصل-	care for	يعتني ب	for instance	علي سبيل المثال
copy	نسخة ينسخ-	care about	يهتم ب	improve	يتحسن
local	محلي	train	يدرب يتدرب-	talent	موهبة
bookshop	محل بيع كتب	trainer	مدرب	praise	مدح يمدح-
shelf	رف	vacation	أجازة	struggle	يكافح كفاح-
suppose	يفترض	develop	يطور	positive	إيجابي
repeat	يكرر	development	تطوير تنمية-	memories	ذكريات

Definitions

cruel	unkind and hurting others	قاسي

governess	a woman who teaches children in their home	مربية مدرسة مقيمة-
housekeeper	a servant who looks after the whole house	مديرة منزل
orphan	a child whose parents are dead	يتيم
schooling	school education	التعليم المدرسي
servant	a person who works for people in their house	خادم
bullying	the use of strength power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker	التنمر / البلطجة
stranger	someone that you do not know or someone in new and unfamiliar place	شخص غريب
lose touch with	to stop having contact with someone	يفقد الاتصال بشخص
make friends	to start a friendship with someone	يكون صداقة
keep in touch with	to continue to have contact with someone	يظل على اتصال مع
deck	one of the floors of a ship or a bus	سطح سفينة أو مركب
wreck	the damage or destruction of something especially a ship at sea	حطام
bandage	a strip of material used to blind a wound or to protect an injured part of the body	ضمادة
education	the process of teaching or learning in a school or a college	تعليم
mast	a tall upright pole which carries sails of a ship or boat	صارية / عمود إشارات
shallow	an area of the sea, a lake, or a river where the water isn't very deep	ضحل / غير عميق

Expressions

became friends with	يصادق يصاحب-	research centers	مراكز بحثية
make friends with	يصادق يصاحب-	applied sciences	علوم تطبيقية
work for	يعمل لدي	be linked with	مرتبط ب
keep in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال ب	shed light on	يلقي الضوء علي
lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال ب	concentrate on	يركز علي
do / take an online course	يدرس عبر الانترنت	be based on	قائم علي
reach a solution	يتوصل إلى حل	keep ... under control	يتحكم في
keep warm	يحافظ علي الدفء	As a consequence	و نتيجة لذلك
get on well with	يتفاهم ينسجم يصاحب- -	believe in	يؤمن ب
be in contact with	يكون علي اتصال ب	for that reason	و لهذا السبب
have contact with	لديه اتصال ب	from my point of view	من وجهة نظري
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	keep trying	يستمر في المحاولة
young people : youth	الشباب	build car engines	يصمم محركات السيارات
home-schooling	تعليم الأشخاص في المنزل	make electricity	يولد كهرباء

Antonyms

kind	عطوف	unkind	قاسي
cruelty	قسوة	mercy	رحمة
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
guest	ضيف	host	مضيف
brave	شجاع	cowardly	جبان
luckily	لحسن الحظ	unluckily	لسوء الحظ
useful	مفيد	harmful	ضار

practical	عملى	theoretical	نظري
Positive	ايجابى	negative	سلبي
increase	زياده	decrease	نقص
secret	سري	common	شائع
honesty	امانه	dishonesty	عدم الامانه
include	يتضمن	exclude	يستبعد
nearby	قريب	far	بعيد
previous	سابق	following	قادم
cruel	قاسي	merciful	رحيم
dead	ميت	alive	علي قيد الحياه
huge	ضخم	small \tiny	صغير – ضئيل

Synonyms

servant	خادم	footman
wealth	ثري	rich
employ	يوظف	hire
cruel	قاسي	unkind
comfortable	مريح	relaxing
previous	سابق	former
unusual	غير معتاد	uncommon
importance	اهميه	significance

educate	يعلم	educate	يثقف	educational	تعليمى
educated	متعلم	illiterate	غير متعلم		
teach	يدرس	learn	يتعلم		

get – receive – have an education	يحصل علي تعليم	secondary education	التعليم الثانوي
public- state education	التعليم الحكومي	private education	التعليم الخاص
primary education	التعليم الابتدائي	preparatory education	التعليم الاعدادي

ينبغي علينا ان نطور النظام التعلمي لواكبه الدول المتقدمه

-we must develop the educational system to cope with advanced countries.

-This programme (educates – learns) youth about the dangers of smoking.

-he is not illiterate, he is well (educational – educated)

Orphan

orphan	يتيتم (يفقد والديه)	orphanage	ملجأ

-We must help the (orphans- orphanage) as they don't have parents to look after them.

-He spent most of his childhood on an (orphan- orphanage)

Bully

bully	بلطجي	bully	يبلطج
bully…into	يبتز	bullying	البلطجه

School

a school	مدرسه	school	الدراسه- يوم دراسي
schooled in	يدرس – يفقه	schooling	التعليم في المدارس
start school	يبدأ الدراسه	attend a school	يذهب الي مدرسه
a high school	مدرسه ثانوي	a boarding school	مدرسه داخليه

an international school	مدرسه عالميه		

-(school- schooling) starts at 7 a.m and ends at 2 a.m
-He was (school- schooled- schooling) in riding horses.
Really I didn't benefit although I had 16 years of (schooled- schooling)
-(A school - **schooling**) includes learning different subjects.
-my doughter started (**school** – schooled) at the age of 5 .
-he could (**school** – schooling) his dog and now it's exciting .
-He (primary – **boarding**) school is a place where children live and study.

اذا سبقت education ب a يعني نوع من التعليم او مرحله تعليميه

-Mr.Ali had a good (educated- education) in Cairo.

successful	ناجح للاشخاص والاشياء	a success	ناجح للاشياء
expert in-on-at	خبير في (متخصص ف)	experienced	لديه خبره ف

-He is expert (about- in – off) chemistry.
-My uncle is an (experience- experienced) mechanic

لا تسبق صيغه التفضيل ب the اذا سبقت ب 's-صفه ملكيه- فعل حب او كراهيه

-Romeo and Juliet is Shakespeare's (best- the best) play.
-It's his (largest- the largest) room.

-الكلمات الاتيه تعامل معاملة المفرد والجمع لانها تضم مجموعه من الاعضاء

team	فريق	family	اسره	army	جيش
gang	عصابة	crew	طاقم سفينه	group	مجموعه
class	فصل	crowd	حشد	public	الجمهور

ولكن تأخذ ضمير وصل which اذا اخذت فعل مفرد
تأخذ ضمير وصل who اذا اخذت فعل الجمع

The team (who-which) won was AlAhly.
The team (who-which) were in the hotel helped me.

لاحظ استخدام v-ing في الصيغ الاتيه:

which+ فعل مبني للمعلوم+فاعل	=v-ing
because فعل مبني للمعلوم+ فاعل	=v-ing
فعل مبني للمعلوم+فاعل+رابط وصل	=v-ing

-while he was walking to school, he saw an accident.
-Walking to school, he saw an accident.
-Because he was reading a lot of books, he became cultivated.
-Reading a lot of books, he became cultivated.
-the boy who plays on the guitar, is my son.
-the boy playing on the guitar is my son.

instead + جمله بدلا من ذلك	وتأتي في بداية او نهايه الجمله الثانيه
instead of v- img – n بدلا من	وقد تأتي مع الجمله الاولي او الثانيه
instead of + ضمير مفعول	قد تجد هذا الشكل ايضا

- (Instead – **instead of**) going to school,she3 stayed at home.
-She didn't go to school (**instead** – instead of) she stayed at home.

in addition + جمله بالاضافه الي	in addition to +v-ing – noun

-He played well In (addition –**addition to**) scoring a goal.
-In **(addition** –addition to) she cooked , she studied her lessons.

thanks to, owing to , due to +v-ing	بفضل - بسبب

-Thanks (to –for)her efforts ,we could carry out the plan.

like = such as	مثل – مثال علي ذلك	like = similar to	مشابه ل

-Mona is (**like** – such as)Noha , they are kind

-I have a lot of polite students (**like** – likes) Heba, Rania,etc….

fail	يفشل - يرسب	failure	فاشل	failure	فشل

-fail to ………… is like educate to education.

a-fail b-**failure** c-failed

Don't get confused

governor	حاكم	governess	مربيه
relation	علاقه - احد الاقارب	relative	احد الاقارب
housekeeper	مسؤل عن المنزل	servant	خادم
employ	يوظف	employer	شركه - صاحب العمل
conclusion	خاتمه - خلاصه	importance	اهمية
wealth	ثروة	wealthy	ثري
cruel	قاسي	cruelty	قسوة
strange(adj)	غريب	a stranger	شخص غريب
quiet	هادئ	quite	الي حد ما
gain	يكسب شئ معنوي	earn	يكسب قوت رزقه مقابل عمل
later	فيما بعد	latter	الاخر
argue for	يؤيد	argue - against	يهاجم
bookshop	مكتبة بيع الكتب	library	مكتبه لغرض الاستعارة
realize	يدرك	recognize	يتعرف علي

Listening

Dareen : Dad, I don't want to change schools. I want to go to school with my friends.

Father : It's not so bad, Dareen. You know, my family used to travel, and I was taken to lots of different countries. So, I'd been to lot of different schools before we come back to Egypt. You can make new friends at a different school.

Dareen : I like my friends at my school now.

Father : It is easy to keep in touch with your friends. I always see you on your phone. I lost touch with the people I'd gone to school with.

Mother: If you don't change school, maybe you can do an online course. Some extra lessons will be helpful. Mona's mother said that Mona had had lots of problems in school before she started having extra lessons.

And they say some of these online courses are fantastic They can understand what your level is and give you work that's just right for you. In fact, you were given a new computer to help you study.

Father : And you can chat with other students online, too. Just like you do at school.

Mother : Mona's mother says Mona has really improved with so much help from her online teachers. Dareen : But, Mum, I learn a lot at school now. I only failed the test because I'd been ill when I took it. Father : Ok. Ok. We'll leave things the way they are for now and then we can discuss it again after your exams at the end of the year.

Dareen : OK! Thank you.

Video script

Most young people go to school every day and have lessons with other children, but not everyone does this. In some countries, students can learn at home instead and their teachers are usually their parents.

We call this way of learning "home-schooling". Home-schooling is useful for young people who live a long way from a school, and it's becoming more popular today because students can

easily use computers to learn wherever they are. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick and cannot go to a school every day.
A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them, rather than following a school timetable. But, on the other hand, home-schooling isn't right for everyone. Home-schooled children might feel lonely because it can be harder for them to make friends. They may not be able to do sports with other young people either.

Reading

Jane Eyre

Charlotte Brontë was born in England in 1816. She and her two sisters all became famous authors. Charlotte Brontë's most famous book is Jane Eyre. It was written in 1847.
Jane Eyre was an **orphan** who lived with her cousins and her wealthy aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was unkind and they did not want Jane to live with them.
Jane was sent away to school. Jane was happy to go to Lowood School, but the owner, Mr Brocklehurst, was very **cruel**, so the students lived unhappy lives.
Finally, cruel Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School.
After two years, Jane decided to apply for a job as a **governess**. Governesses were often employed by rich families. She started to teach a young French girl called Adèle at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, the kind **housekeeper**.
One night, there was a fire at Thornfield Hall. Jane saved Mr Rochester from the fire. He said that the fire was started by a **servant** called Grace, but Grace did not lose her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a secret in the house. Jane decided to leave Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.

Read a letter that Charlotte Brontë wrote to her friend Ellen Nussey. Do you think Charlotte likes her new job? Why/Why not?

Dear Ellen,

I told you some time ago that I wanted to get a good job. I am glad to say that I have found one as governess and I am quite happy.
The house is not very large but it is very comfortable and the gardens are huge. Although I earn less money than in my previous job, I am working with kind, friendly people. I have two pupils: an eight-year-old girl and a six-year-old boy.
My job as a governess can be very difficult because children have so much energy. I just hope I will not become ill trying to keep them under control and make them happy.
Well, I must continue with my work. I hope to see you soon.
Kind regards,

Charlotte

Reading

STEM SUBJECTS

Science, technology, engineering and maths were taught in schools long before the invention of the internet. However, we now live in a time when these subjects are more important than ever. This does not mean that music, history, languages and other subjects are not important. However, understanding the so-called STEM subjects can be an important bridge to a good job in the future.
Many businesses do not have enough people with knowledge of the STEM subjects. For that reason, they are keen to give jobs to young people with these skills.
In the past, STEM subjects were often seen as difficult. To change this idea, many businesses now run open days at which students can try building car engines, using a bike to make electricity, or playing computer games to practise maths.
Schools, too, are helping students to realise that these subjects can be both interesting and fun for boys and girls of all abilities. Schools might not have the equipment to build engines, but many

now use different experiments and computers so that students can learn by doing things, and not just by reading a text.
This also helps with critical thinking skills which students can use in other subjects. It is said that 80% of jobs in the future will need students to have skills in the STEM subjects. Of course we will also need artists, musicians, language teachers and other experts, but skills in STEM subjects will help students to become the problem solvers and inventors of the future.

Extra Reading
STEM Schools seek:

- Partnerships with universities, research centers, factories, companies and those who care about education for development, training and application.
- To be linked with the latest innovations and research issues in a lifelong culture and to work as a team with students and teachers.
- To develop the elements of innovation and creativity as an essential goal and to shed light on the role of science and engineering in the development of Egypt and the world.
- To provide technical and financial support for the student-based learning focused on inquiry, projects and working as a team.
- Ongoing evaluation of all students and teachers while concentrating on developing the highest skills and self-reliance possible.

Expressing disagreeing	التعبير عن عدم الموافقة	Expressing agreeing	التعبير عن الموافقة
That's true	هذا حقيقي	I'd say the opposite	بالعكس
I'd go along with that	أتفق مع هذا الرأي	I'm completely against	أنا تماما ضد
I couldn't agree more	أوافقك الرأي تماماً	I'm not so sure	لست متأكد اً
I agree	أتفق	I don't agree	لا أتفق
You're right	أنت علي حق	That's not always true	هذاليس صحيح دائما
I suppose so	أعتقد ذلك	I don't think so	لا أعتقد ذلك
Exactly!	بالضبط	I disagree	لا أوافق

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

☺Form ------------------------------ التكوين

1-التصريف الاول للفعل مضافا إليه ied – ed – d مثل

play	يلعب	played	cook	يطبخ	cooked
finish	ينهي	finished	visited	يزور	visited
die	يموت	die	tie	يربط	tied
lie	يكذب	lied	decide	يقرر	decided
cry	يصرخ	cried	fry	يقلي	fried
try	يحاول	tried	study	يذاكر	studied

☺ الشكل الاخر هو التصريف الثاني للفعل مثل :

give	يعطي	gave	write	يكتب	wrote
make	يصنع	made	catch	يمسك	caught
have	يملك	had	win	يفوز	won
do	يفعل	did	am,is,are	يكون	was-were

eat	يأكل	ate	read	يقرأ	read
leave	يترك	left	see	يري	saw
cost	يكلف/ يتكلف	cost	lie	يكذب	Lied
burn	يحرق	burnt	lay	تبيض/ تلد	Laid
learn	يتعلم	learnt	lie	يغفو	lay

Negative:

never+التصريف الثاني للفعل **didn't + inf**

-she learned a lot throughout her life.

- -she didn't learn much throughout her life.
- -she never learned throughout her life.

Question:

Did + subject + inf ?
Was\ were + subject +adj /n?

- -A: Did he eat the cake?
- B: No, he didn't

- -A: Was she at the circus?
- B: No, she wasn't

Key words:

once	ذات مرة	**day**	ذات يوم
past	ماذي	**ancient**	قديم
yesterday	امس	**previous**	سابق
the other day	امس	**ago**	مضي – منذ
How long ago	متي	**in +**	تاريخ ماضي
last week	الاسبوع الماضي	**last year**	السنه الماضيه
last……			

- -The Pharaohs (rule- ruled) in Egypt in the past.
- -He (works- - worked) in a bank 5 years ago.
- -Yesterday I can (run- ran) into my old friend.
- -How long ago (did you visit- have you visited) the pyramids.

Passive:

Was\ were + p.p

- |-the report (checked- was checked) properly.
- -My car (repaired – was repaired) in the garage.

Usage:

1-حدث بدأ وانتهي في الماضي في وقت محدد:

- -I travelled to London in 2003.

2-لوصف احداث متتابعه في الماضي:

- -I got up late so I washed and wore my clothes then went down the street and waved to a taxi.

3-حدث استغرق وقت في الماضي وانتهي في الماضي

- -I lived in Alex for 5years = it means that I left Alex.

4-للتعبير عن المضارع في حالة التمني والرغبة وهنا مع:

– I wish	ماضي بسيط + فاعل	(تمني شئ في المضارع)
–If only	ماضي بسيط +فاعل	(تمني شئ في المضارع)
–I'd rather	ماضي بسيط +فاعل	(من الافضل في المضارع)

- -I wish I had a lot of money now.
- -I'd rather they were with us now.
- -It's time he helped us in this problem.
- -If only I were taller now.

5-للتعبير عن العادات وهناك اساليب كثيرة للتعبير عن العادة في الماضي:

1-always \ often \ usually + ماضي بسيط

- -when he was young he always played in the street.

2- used to + inf كان معتاد علي

- -When he was a student , he used to study a lot.

3- Was \ Were used to + v – ing كان معتاد علي

- -He was used to getting up late when he was a teenager.

4-become\ got used to + v- ing
-كان معتاد علي ولكن اخذ العاده بالتدريج كأنني بقول بدأ يعتاد علي

- -when he felt that his father become sad, he got used to paying attention to his study.

5- subject was \ were in the habit of +v- ing
6-It was (his) habit to + inf
7-His \ Her habit was to + inf

موضوع **used to** بالتفصيل

تعبر عن عاده في الماضي لم تعد في الحاضر

- **-He used to get up late.**

-كان متعود في الماضي الاستيقاظ متأخرا أي الآن يستيقظ مبكرا

  - -Now, he no longer gets up late.
  - Now, he doesn't get up late any more \ any longer.
  - -Now, he gets up early.

- عند التحدث عن العادات — **be used to + v- ing**
- يستخدم لكي — **be used to + inf**
- اثبات — **used to + inf**
- نفي — **didn't use to + inf**

- -Really he didn't use to smoke. Now he smokes.
- -He didn't use to be rich , Now he is rich.

يمكن استخدام would + inf للتعبير عن التكرار في الماضي

- -Every morning, I would run for 3 kilometres.
- -My grandfather would always say "you're failure"

ولكن لا نستخدم would لتدل علي التكرار مع افعال الحب والكراهيه

Possess – own – have – to be

-He used to be brave when he was young. ☑

-He would be brave when he was young. ☒

يمكن استخدام did + inf للتعبير عن التأكيد علي حدوث شئ في الماضي

-I did go to the office = I really went to the office.

لا تنسي:

فاعل **last +** ماضي بسيط **when +** جمله ماضي بسيط

the hast time فاعل ماضي بسيط **when +** جمله ماضي بسيط

-I last saw Mona when I was in Alex.

-The last time I saw Mona was when I was in Alex.

1-Choose the correct answer (practice)

1-He left for Paris two days……… **(ago – for – since – last)**

2-Talat Harb…Misr Bank several years ago. **(find – found – founded – finds)**

3-……….he at home last night? **(Was – Were – Did – Could)**

4-……..they watch the film last week? **(Were – Can – Did – Do)**

5-Where……you born? **(were – are – was – did)**

6-I studied English literature…2005. **(since – for – at – in)**

7-Nora……….at school yesterday. **(isn't – wasn't – didn't be – doesn't be)**

8-When I was young, I ……play football on Fridays.

(used – am used – used to – was used to)

9-Are camels still used to…..things on their backs?

(carrying – carried – carries – carry)

10-Why……millions of people go to America in the 19th century?

(do – did – have – had)

11-They…..the telegram last night.

(receive – have received – receives – received)

12-We……to go to Hurghada last summer as our favourite resort.

(preferred – had preferred – are preferring – prefer)

13-I……travel to France when I was young.

(use to – got used to – used to – was used to)

14-Our car…..down and we had to walk three kilometres.

(broke – breaks – broken – breaking)

15-Omar…..across the Sahara last year.

(was cycling – cycled – has cycled – cycles)

16-Yesterday, we……some beautiful fish in the Red Sea.

(are seeing – were seeing – see – saw)

17-The tourists…….swimming in the sea. It was too dirty.

(don't enjoy – didn't enjoy – weren't enjoy – never enjoy)

18-My grandparents……a holiday last summer.

(never had – never has – have never had – never have)

19-Who……the door?

(you opened – did you open – opened – were you opened)

20-……….., a lorry hit a motorbike.

(Yesterday – Tomorrow – Ago – Now)

21-Adel read an interesting story……………

(every day – ago – now – the other day)

22-I…….lunch at home yesterday.

(haven't – hadn't – don't have – didn't have)

23-He usually…….his grandparents when he was on holiday.

(visit – visits – visited – visiting)

24-My team won the match and I …….a goal.

(scored – score – have score – scores)

Home work

1-I didn't eat my breakfast because I ……………….hungry.

(weren't – didn't – hadn't – wasn't)

2-He………as an engineer 10 years ago.

(works – has worked – worked – had worked)

3-The sun………every day that summer.

(shine – shines – shone – was shining)

4-I …………a great holiday last year.

(was having – had had – had – have)

5-Where did you………this book?

(buy – buying – bought – to buy)

6-He…….in France for 2 years. Now he is back in Cairo.

(had stayed – has stayed – stayed – was staying)

7-He……..play football, but now he's too old now.

(used to – uses to – use to – is used to)

8-He………..into town every day last week.

(drove – drives – was drove – was driving)

9-When I was seven, I ………..a poem which won a prize.

(write – writes – wrote – have written)

10-I………enjoy playing on the beach.

(am used to – used to – used – use to)

11-In 20210, my parents………..in a small flat in Giza.

(had lived – live – have lived – lived)

12-My mother made me a cake. It ………of lemons.

(was tasting – has tasted – tastes – tasted)

13-Hany……..at school yesterday.

(isn't – wasn't – didn't be – weren't)

14-Where………..at school yesterday

(did Mona be – does Mona be – was Mona – were Mona)

15-………have breakfast at home yesterday?

(Were you – Did you – Do you – Are you)

16-If I ……..by the sea, I'd go swimming every day.

(live – lived – was lived – were lived)

17-I…….into a good family from the south of Egypt.

(bear – bore – born – was born)

18-A huge ship…………in the ocean last Friday.

(sank – sink – sinks – sinking)

19-He………..off his horse last week.

(falls – fell – fallen – was falling)

20-How many pens…………..he buy last night?

(was – were – did – had)

21-My father bought a magazine and…………..it to me.

(give – gives – gave – was giving)

22-My bicycle………..last night. What a pity!

(stole – was stolen – were stolen – was stealing)

23-My arm was swollen because I ………..by a bee.

(sting – stung – was stung – had stung)

24-The road repairs…………..last month.

(were completed – were completing – had completed – completed)

25-We…..that we had to give in our homework on Monday.

(told – have told – were telling – were told)

26-Last week a new shopping centre………in our town.

(was opened – was opening – had opened – has been opened)

27-A lot of projects………..in the western desert in 2010.

(are carried out – were carried out – carried out – being carried out)

28-Maged……at the party last night.

(didn't see – wasn't seen – hadn't seen – hasn't seen)

29-He……to hospital in an ambulance.

(took – was taken – had taken – was taking)

30-By whom…………..the letters posted?

(have – had – were – did)

The past perfect simple زمن الماضى التام البسيط

Had + p.p passive ⟶ had been + p.p

يدل على حدث قد تم قبل حدث آخر

After I had done my homework, I slept — معنى الكلام أنه قام بعمل الواجب أولا ثم نام

He didn't buy anything because he had lost his money — أى أنه فقد أمواله أولا

- يعبر الماضي التام عن حدث وقع قبـــــــل وقت معين في الماضي

- Mustafa had done all his homework before midnight.

- She had already (**sent** – been sending) out 20 invitations before I arrived
- By the time I went to sleep, I had (**read** – been reading) a hundred pages.

After when/As soon as ماضى التام/بسيط ⟶ , ماضى بسيط ⟶

- **First he studied then he watched TV.**
- After he had studied / studied, he watched TV.
- As soon as he (**met** – meet) Mona, he told her everything.

لكن هناك فرق طفيف بين الماضى التام و البسيط بعد after

- After he had done his h.w, he watched TV.

أى أن هناك فيصل زمنى بين الحدث الأول و الثانى .

- After he did the h.w, he watched TV.

أى هناك فترة زمنية بسيطة جدا أو لا يوجد فيصل زمنى

After when/As soon as ماضى التام *,would +inf*

As soon as I (have– **had**)finished a story , I would start the next one

Before /when/By the time زمن الماضــــى البسيـط ⟶ زمن الماضــــى التــام ⟶

As soon as / By the time إذا لم يوجد فاعل و ليس " v ---- ing " **Before / After** يأتى بعد

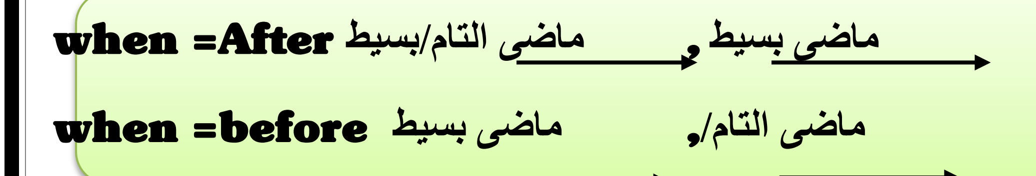
- After (**cooking** – had cooked) , he telephoned Samy .
- Before (studying – studied) , he had had his meal .
- (**After** – As soon as) finishing , he went to the cinema .
- When I went home I discovered that some (broke – **had broken**) into my room

☛I **received** a letter from my uncle last week , He (hasn't – **hadn't**] written to us since 2009

Having +p.p

Having +p.p ماضى بسيط ، ← مبنى للمعلوم
Having been +p.p ماضى بسيط ، ← مبنى للمجهول

(having – **Having been**) signed , the letter was sent to the company.
(**Having**- having been) signed the letter , he sent the letter to the company.



when =After ماضى التام/بسيط , ماضى بسيط

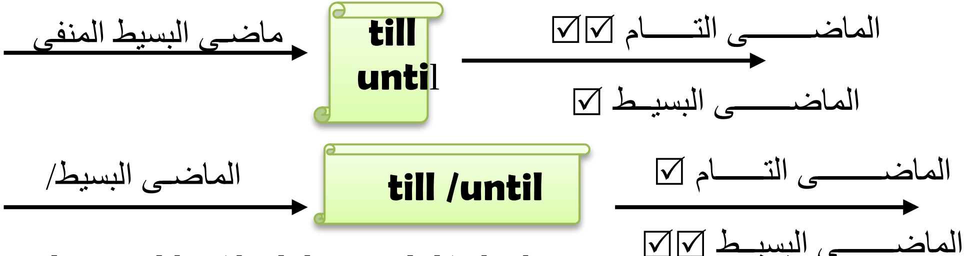
when =before ماضى بسيط , ماضى التام/

- When I **arrived** at the party, Tom **left**. = Tom left when I arrived.
- When I **arrived** at the party, Tom **had left**. = Tom left before I arrived.

☛When the doctor arrived , he (**examined** – had examined)his patient
☛When he arrived at the station , the train (left – **had left**)so he missed it

By + نقطـــة زمنيــــــــة + ... ماضـــى تـــــام ....

- **By last** Friday, he **had finished** the report.
- She had nearly revised all her lessons by six o'clock yesterday.



ماضـى البسيط المنفى → **till until** → الماضـــــى التـــام ☑☑ / الماضـــــى البسيـط ☑

الماضـى البسيط/ → **till /until** → الماضـــــى التـــام ☑ / الماضـــــى البسيـط ☑☑

He didn't play until he (had done – did) the h.w .
They didn't cook (until – **because**) the gas had run out .
They didn't cook (**until** – because) he had come from his work . .
He waited for her **until**) she (**came**-had come) .

الماضـــــى البسيـط ☑☑ **till /until** الماضـى التام او بسيط المثبت

He had revised the exam till the time (**finished** – had finished)

الفكرة فى الجمل ان الماضى التام هو الحدث الاول

* لاحظ أيضا استخدام (until / till) في الجمل الآتيـــــة

- I had waited for Sara until she arrived
- He had studied his lessons until dawn.
- I waited until 6 o'clock and then I went home.

It was only when الماضى التام **that** الماضى البسيط
It wasn't until الماضى التام **that** الماضى البسيط

⌛It was only when he (finishes -**had finished**) that he went to the cinema.

It wasn't (because – **until**) he had met Ali that he told him the truth .

No sooner

فاعل	+had no sooner	+P.p	than	ماضى بسيط
فاعل	+had hardly	+P.p	when/before	ماضى بسيط
فاعل	+had scarcely	+P.p	when/before	ماضى بسيط

ويمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط ولكنة غير مستحدم كثيرا مع هذة الروابط

First the bell rang then students entered.

- The bell **had** no sooner **rung** **than** students entered .
- The bell no sooner **rang** **than** students entered .
- No sooner **had** the bell **rung** **than** students entered .
- No sooner **did** the bell **ring** **than** students entered .

No sooner **did** فاعل **+ inf** **than**
had فاعل **+p.p** الافضل**had** اذا كان الرابط فى البداية

- No sooner (did – **had**) he invited Ali than he accepted .
- Hardly (**was the lesson** – had the lesson) written when Ali came .

ويمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط ولكنة غير مستحدم كثيرا مع هذة الروابط

ملاحظات خفيفة للطلبة الظريفه

1-يمكن استخدام الماضى التام مع **Since, just already , for**

- -when I resigned last year I **had worked** for the company **for** 5 years.
- -When the police came, she **had already killed** him.

2-يمكن استخدام الماضى التام مع الروابط السبب والنتيجة والتناقض مع الحدث الاول

- -She looked very tired **because she hadn't** slept well.
- -He looked happy **although he had lost** the gold medal.

3-عند ذكر توقيت محدد لوقوع الحدث فى الماضى فأن الماضى البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضى التام مع **Before, after** كلاهما صحيح خاصة مع

- -She **had phoned** me yesterday before she went out.
- -She **phoned** me yesterday before she went out.

4-اذا وجدت ثلاثة أفعال فى الماضى ضع الحدث الاول ماضى تام والحدثان الأقربان ماضى بسيط.

- When I got home , I realized that someone had broken into my flat.

5--يمكن استخدام الماضى التام بعد الروابط الآتيه للتعبير عن رغبة أو أمنية فى الماضى

I 'd rather +	فاعل	+ ماضى تام	رغبة فى الماضى
If only +	فاعل	+ ماضى تام	امنية فى الماضى
I wish +	فاعل	+ ماضى تام	امنية فى الماضى

- -I wish I had met him yesterday.
- -if only they had played well in the previous match.

After that +ماضى بسيط حدث تانى	**Before that** + ماضى تام حدث أول

- I watched TV before that, I had studied.
- I had done my homework. After that, I played.

مثال حلو اقدم الاحداث ماضى تام

After she told me that her father (died – **had died**), I decided to visit her

ملاحظات عامه

Immediately after → (اسم) or (v + ing ماضى)

Immediately after his arrival at the station, the train left.

بشرط أن تكون الجملة *because* بعد لاحظ :ـ أحيانا يستخدم الماضي التام

Leila was late for school because the bus had broken down.

He was angry because she had insulted him.

إذا كان مع الكلمات الدالة علي المضارع التام لاحظ :ـ يستخدم الماضي التام

for / ever / never / already / yet / just

The film had already started when I arrived.

On → (اسم) or (v + ing) → ماضي بسيط

On finishing work, I left the office.

The moment → ماضي تام → ماضي بسيط

The moment I had finished work, I left the office.

3-Choose the correct answer Practice

1- They watched TV after they ………….their homework.

a-have done b-do c-had done d-were doing

2- I sent the book to the publisher as soon as I ………. It.

a-had finished b-finished c-was finishing d-finish

3- After the house ……… painted, we furnished it.

a-had b-had been c-has been d-is

4- No sooner ………… the noise than we rushed to the spot.

a-had we heard b-did we hear c-we had heard d-we did hear

5- As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson…….. .

a-had begun b-began c-begins d-has begun

6- -I………… the film before I read the book.

a-already saw b-have already seen c-had already seen d-has already seen

7- As soon as I ………. a story, I sent it to the magazine editor.

a-had finished b-have finished c-finished d-finish

8- Yesterday, my sister gave me a book she……….. reading the day before.

a-finished b-has finished c-had finished d-finishes

9- As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson had ……………..
a) begun b) beginning c) had begun. d)began

10- I ……………………already seen the film before I read the book.
a) have b) had c) has d) will have

11- I………………my own computer for three years before anything went wrong with it.
a) 'd had b) has had c) was having d) have

12- It was dark when we reached the beach because the sun ………. down.
a) was going b) has gone c) had gone d) went

13- After Mona had played the piano, she ……………her sister with her homework
a) was helping b) helping c) is helping d) helped

14- No sooner ………… met my father than I asked him for money
a) have I b) had I c) I had d) I did

15- What did you do after …………….. school yesterday?
a) had left b) left c) leave d) leaving

ايه يا عم حكاية whenبس بالتفصيل

When (1) ماضى بسيط/ تام+ (2)ماضى بسيط=After
When (2)ماض بسيط + (1)ماضى تام=before

When I came , Ali (left - **had left**) so I didn't see him .
When I came , Ali (**left** – had left) but I saw him .
Ex: When I arrived at the station, the train (left / **had left**) So I missed it .

When ماضى بسيط , ماضى بسيط فى حالة عادة فى الماضى

Ex: When I was young, I always (plays – **played**) in the street .
Ex:- When I went to Cairo, I (**ate** – eat) beans every day .

When ماضى مستمر , ماضى بسيط
When ماضى بسيط , ماضى مستمر
حدث قطع حدث

Ex: When I was walking, I (saw – was seeing) an accident .
Ex: When my father came, I (studied – was studying)

When ماضى مستمر , ماضى مستمر

□فى حالة حدثان مستمران فى وقت واحد .
Ex: When I was sleeping, Ali (play – was playing)

When مضارع بسيط , مضارع بسيـــط

فى حالة التحدث عن حقائق علمية ، فى حالة If zero
Ex: When we eat water, it (turns – turned) into steam .

When مضارع تام / بسيط , will + inf مستقبل

Ex: When (**finish** – finished) we will go out .
Ex: When take our decision, we (let – **will let**) you know .

4-Choose the correct answer :-

1- When I woke up, my father ………. So I saw him .
a) left *b) had left* *c) have left* *d) has left*

2- When I woke up, my father ………. So I didn't see him .
a) left *b) had left* *c) was leaving* *d) has left*

3- I didn't see my friend. When I arrived at her house, she ……… out .

a) has gone *b) had gone* *c) went* *d) had been going*

4- He………..two rooms when he fell off the ladder.

a)has painted *b)painted* *c)was painting* *d)had painted*

5- He was tired because he……………all the way home.

a)had run *b)runs* *c)is running* *d)has run*

6- When I opened the fridge, I …………..it was full of food, but in fact it was empty.

a)think *b)thought* *c)was thinking* *d)had thought*

7- When I arrived at the station the train………..so I didn't catch it.

a)left *b))had left* *c)have left* *d)would leave*

8- When I got home last night, I found that somebody………into the flat.

a)breaks *b)broke* *c)had broken* *d)was breaking*

9- When he looked into the street he found that the car……….. .

a)had gone *b)went* *c)has gone* *d)goes*

10- When the policeman ……… , the thief had already run away.

a) arrived *b) had arrived c) arrive* *d) have arrived*

EXERCISES ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer

1. The death penalty is considered .... punishment in all civilized countries.

a) merciful **b) cruel** **c) kind** **d) keen**

2. Their child was getting bullied, so they decided to .... him.

a) show **b) learn** **c) ignore** **d) home-school**

3. Our school is provided with a laboratory which has all the latest ....

a) equations **b) equip** **c) equipment** **d) equipped**

4. Only the wise can avoid .... the mistakes of the past.

a) repeating **b) repetition** **c) repeated** **d) repeat**

5. In .... years, we always went to the beach for vacation.

a) generous **b) obvious** **c) previous** **d) serious**

6. .... care about education for development, training and application.

a) boarding schools **b) kindergartens** **c) STEM Schools** **d) cradles**

7. Harry phoned to say he was on his way, so I .... he'll be here soon.

a) suppose **b) propose** **c) oppose** **d) repose**

8. The team .... daily at the beginning of the season.

a) rained **b) snowed** **c) trained** **d) qualified**

9. .... encourage customers to buy more products.

a) Inventions **b) Ambitions** **c) Applications** **d) Advertisements**

10. I've been busy at home and have hardly had any .... with the outside world.

a) contract **b) contact** **c) attract** **d) attack**

11. I'd like to thank my parents for all of their love and .... over the years.

a) support **b) report** **c) import** **d) export**

12. Why did you tell Amal about my illness? You just can't keep a ...., can you?

a) puzzle **b) mystery** **c) secrete** **d) secret**

13. You should visit your doctor and .... his advice.

a) send **b) give** **c) refuse** **d) seek**

14. Medical .... agree that this medicine can prevent deaths from cancer.

a) experts **b) experience** **c) experienced** **d) expertise**

15. You can ask her for advice. She's a good problem ....

a) discoverer **b) inventor** **c) solver** **d) maker**

16. Of course I want to spend more time with Ola. I .... about her.
a) attention b) prepare c) care d) dare
17. Wafaa was so shy that she found it difficult to .... friends at school.
a) obtain b) make c) do d) detain
18. A .... is a woman who is paid to care for and teach a child in the child's house
a) governor b) governess c) govern d) government
19. He is .... to learn more about folk music.
a) wean b) exciting c) interests d) keen
20. This .... charity has robbed thousands of poor people of their money.
a) honest b) killed c) called d) so-called
21. My grandpa went .... working until he was 91.
a) in b) off c) on d) out
22. I'm looking for a job which will enable me to develop my ....
a) skulls b) skills c) skilled d) skillful
23. Most Gulf countries' .... comes from oil.
a) wealth b) wealthy c) health d) healthy
24. Maha left the dirty dishes for the .... and went to work.
a) landlord b) shopkeeper c) goalkeeper d) housekeeper
25. I wish you'd spend more time at home .... of going out every night.
a) alternative b) substitute c) instead d) instill
26. From an economic point of ...., the new development will benefit the town greatly.
a) view b) review c) viewer d) view
27. Well, I'm going out for the evening, keep the kids .... your control!
a) under b) below c) on d) out of
28. Jack didn't receive much formal .... His mother taught him at home.
a) scholastic b) schools c) school d) schooling
29. A judge's job is to .... the law, not to make new laws.
a) apply b) supply c) rely d) cry
30. He was became an.................... when his parents died in a car accident.
a) orphanage b) ambitious c) orphan d) adult
31. I'm not sure you .... how important it is that we find these documents.
a) congratulate b) appreciate c) resuscitate d) evaluate
32. When you move to a new city, it can be hard to make ....
a) friend b) friendship c) friends d) friendly
33. She has a lot of .... experience in dealing with these kinds of problems.
a) practically b) practice c) practical d) practice
34. She asked for divorce طلاق due to her husband's ....
a) mercy b) cruelty c) cruel d) cruelly
35. All poor families struggle with .... problems
a) financial b) finance c) financially d) final
36. Only .... families afford to send your children to private schools.
a) health b) healthy c) wealth d) wealthy
37. It's time you .... on studying for your exams.
a) estimated b) focused c) discussed d) appreciated
38. Maher's behaviour was so badly that his parents sent him to a .... school.
a) broad b) board c) STEM school d) boarding

39. She is a wealthy woman who has .... to do all her work for her.
a) shopkeepers b) masters c) servants d) lords
40. She .... the praise of her family for her voluntary work.
a) promoted b) defeated c) beat d) earned
41. The teacher helped students .... their creative writing skills.
a) lose b) develop c) devastate d) deteriorate
42. I've put your dinner in the oven to keep it ....
a) warm b) warn c) war d) ward
43. She just seems so unhappy and I don't know what the .... is.
a) solvable b) solve c) salutation d) solution
44. The book had a .... influence on me. It helped change my behaviour.
a) positive b) passive c) negative d) inventive
45. Cousin David kept in .... by sending e-mails from South America.
a) couch b) touch c) pouch d) reach
46. I have the .... to be the best in my field of work.
a) probability b) disability c) inability d) ability
47. I .... touch with so many of my classmates. We no longer meet.
a) post b) won c) lost d) kept
48. Saving energy in your home is fairly easy from a .... point of view.
a) practical b) practice c) practise d) practically
49. I'd like to...................... a writing course when I retire.
a) make b) run c) do d) manage
50. I get on...................... with my sister. She is my best friend.
a) wall b) will c) well d) wail

Exercises on Grammar

1. My house was very dirty when she came over because I .... it for weeks.
a) hadn't cleaned b) had cleaned c) haven't cleaned d) cleaned
2. My house is very dirty because I .... it for weeks.
a) hadn't cleaned b) had cleaned c) haven't cleaned d) cleaned
3. I .... the film, so I don't want to watch it again.
a) already see b) had already seen c) have already seen d) will already see
4. I .... the film but I decided to watch it again last night.
a) already see b) had already seen c) have already seen d) will already see
5. I .... the film last night for the first time.
a) watched b) have watched c) had watched d) watch
6. The boys were playing football when it .... to rain.
a) start b) had started c) has started d) started
7. Our computer .... down before I wrote an e-mail.
a) broke b) has broken c) breaks d) will break
8. After .... the summer holiday with us.My aunt bought me a lovely gift
a) spending b) spent c) had spent d) has spent
9. I was worried when she didn't arrive on time because she..................… late before.
a) will be b) hadn't been c) were d) hadn't
10. Yesterday, my sister gave me a book she .... reading the day before
a) has finished b) finished c) had finished d) was finishing
11. She …….......…. the newspaper every day. Now she doesn't have time.
a) always read b) always reads c) reads d) has read
12. Ali …………..... already read some of Shakespeare's writing before learning about him in class.

a) have b) had c) is d) was

13. As soon as the criminal …………, he was sent to prison.

a) arrested b) has been arrested c) had been arrested d) was being arrested

14. Did you go out last night or ……..…….. you busy?

a) did b) were c) have d) are

15. Was Zaher at the party when you arrived ? – No, he …............home.

a) went b) had gone c) was going d) has gone

16. When it was lunchtime , I didn't eat much . I ……............... a big breakfast.

a) was having b) have had c) had had d) will be having

17. I didn't know the time because my watch ………………..

a) broken b) had broken c) is broken d) didn't break

18. We couldn't afford to keep our car , so we ………….it.

a) had sold b) have sold c) were sold d) sold

19. Walaa fell down the stairs this morning and ……….. he leg.

a) was broken b) has broken c) had broken d) broke

20. I .... tell my teacher that my mum had helped me with my homework.

a) does not b) cannot c) did not d) don't

21. I didn’t go to school ………..… I had had breakfast.

a) while b) by the time c) because d) until

22. Having ………. the visa, I booked a flight to Canada.

a) received b) had received c) to receive d) receiving

23. As soon as I saw the accident, I ………. the ambulance.

a) phone b) will phone c) had phoned d) phoned

24. I returned the book to the library when I ………. it.

a) will read b) had read c) was reading d) have read

25. By dinner time, mother ………. prepared all the dishes we like most. Food was really delicious.

a) has already b) had already c) hadn’t already d) already has

26. Adel ………. in Tanta in 2002.

a) is born b) bore c) was born d) had born

27. I ………. till my friend had arrived to go to the club together.

a) left b) didn’t leave c) won’t leave d) am leaving

28. I ………. till my friend arrives to go to the club together.

a) left b) didn’t leave c) won’t leave d) am leaving

29. Egypt qualified for the world football cup finals in Russia in 2018. It ………. since 1990.

a) hadn’t qualified b) hasn’t qualified c) didn’t qualify d) won’t qualify

30. I realized that I ……….a silly mistake in the exam when I returned home and checked my answer.

a) have made b) had made c) am making d) made

31. I lived in Tanta two years ago. This means that I…………….. there.

a) live no longer b) no longer live c) live d) was lived

32. Nada first met her best friend when she................... at primary school.

a) has been b) was being c) was d) is

33. After the house .... painted, we furnished it.

a) had b) had been c) has been d) is

34. Before .... to bed, the baby had drunk all his milk.

a) going b) to go c) went d) being gone

35. By 2015, I …………… three novels. It was a great achievement for me.

a) had written b) will have written c) have been writing d) was writing

36. Hardly ……………….. from abroad when he was asked to travel again.

a) he has returned b) has he returned c) he had returned d) had he returned

37. After .... from Cairo university, he traveled abroad.

a) had graduated b) graduated c) graduate d) graduating

38. By the time he was 15, my daughter................… all the Holy Quran by heart.

a) had kept b) kept c) was keeping d) has kept

39. What .... she say when he asked her to marry him?

a) does b) did c) will d) has

40. I was happy to see her, because we .... each other for years.

a) don't see b) had not seen c) not see d) cannot see

41. Having .... the game. they took a shower.

a) finished b) had finished c) finishing d) finish

42. Having .... badly at school, he decided not to go again.

a) treated b) been treated c) treating d) treats

43. As soon as she entered the room, she .... there was something wrong.

a) knows b) had known c) has known d) knew

44. As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson ……………..

a) had begun b) began c) begins d) has begun

45. When we arrived at school, the first lesson ……………..

a) had begun b) begin c) begins d) has begun

46. As soon as we arrive at school, the first lesson ……………..

a) had begun b) began c) will begin d) has begun

47. I …………the film before I read the book.

a) already saw b) have already seen c) had already seen d) has already seen

48. Amal was exhausted yesterday because she …............. well for several days.

a) hadn't slept b) hasn't slept c) doesn't sleep d) won't sleep

49. When we reached the station we .... that we had lost our way.

a) had realized b) realized c) were realizing d) realize

TEST NINE

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She cheated in the test by .... from the boy in front.

a) speaking b) reading c) writing d) copying

2. I enjoyed the book, but I can't remember the name of its ....

a) author b) mentor c) actor d) inventor

3. Don't worry, I've got everything.................. control here at the office.

a) on b) under c) above d) below

4. She has made a series of documentaries on the .... of family relationships.

a) direction b) movie c) subject d) object

5. Companies are .... to give jobs to young people with practical skills.

a) keen b) lean c) dean d) wean

6. Ali used a USB cable to .... the printer with the computer.

a) wink b) link c) pink d) sink

7. The boy failed his math test. As a ...., all his family were upset

a) cause b) consequences c) consequently d) consequence

8. Football team get a lot of .... from their fans.

a) support b) report c) import d) export

9. The baby .... trying to climb out of its pushchair.

a) wept b) slept c) kept d) swept

10. She's always so much fun at parties. For that ...., I'm sorry she can't come tonight.

a) result b) reason c) intention d) reasonable

11. All the tickets .... before the concert began.

a) had sold b) were selling c) had been sold d) was sold

12. .... had I started work in the garden, than it started raining.

a) After b) Having c) No sooner d) No longer

13. She .... until her coffee had cooled down before taking a sip.
a) has waited **b) was waiting** **c) waited** **d) waits**
14. I will wait until I the train ....
a) arrives **b) arrived** **c) have arrived** **d) had arrived**
15. .... finished our work, we went home.
a) Had **b) Having** **c) Had had** **d) Have**
16. By the time we arrived, the other guests .... already there.
a) are being **b) are** **c) have been** **d) were**

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Advertising has become a very specialized activity in modern times. In the business world of today, supply is usually greater than demand. There is great competition between the different manufacturers of the same kind of product to persuade **purchasers** to buy their own particular make. They always have to remind the customer of the name and the quality of their product. They do this by advertising. The manufacturer advertises in the newspaper and on posters. He sometimes pays for songs to be sung about his product on commercial radio programmes. He employs attractive salesgirls to distribute samples of **it**. He organizes competitions with prizes for the winners. He often advertises on the screens of local cinemas. Most important of all, in those countries that have television, he has advertisements put into the programmes whenever this is possible. Manufacturers often spend large sums of money on advertisements.
We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We usually think so because the advertisements say so. Some people never pause to ask themselves if the advertisements are telling the truth.

1. Manufacturers advertise the goods they want to sell ....
a) in newspapers b) on posters
c) on TV programmes d) in different means of advertising
2. We buy certain goods because ....
a) advertisements affect us b) we don't need them
c) supply is greater than demand d) we buy a certain make
4. The word "**purchasers**" in this passage means...................
a) customers b) producers c) investors d) sellers
4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
a) his goods b) his product c) his factory d) his advertisement

b. Answer the following questions:
5. Why do manufacturers spend so much money on advertising ?
6. Find in the text words which mean: **a) quantities** **b) notices of something for sale**
7. What else, do you think, manufacturers of a product can do to increase their sales?

5) Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:
A good education always brings success in a student’s later life.’

Translate into Arabic:
Time management is important for your personal life and career success. It can help you find the time for what you desire, and for what you need to do.

Translate into English:

مازلنا نعتمد في تحصيل المعرفة علي الكتاب الورقي بالرغم من التقدم التكنولوجي- .

....

Unit 10

What's your job

quality	صفة/ سمة-	various	متعدد/ متنوع-	pursue	يستمر/ يواصل-
profession	مهنة	several	عديد	career	حياة عملية/ مهنة-
professional	محترف	deadline	الموعد النهائي	equal	متساوي
incredible	لا يصدق/ مذهل-	casualty	مصاب/ جريح-	equally	بشكل متساوي
incredibly	بشكل لا يُصدق	qualify	يؤهل/ يتأهل-	characteristic	سمة/ خاصية-
reward	يكافئ/ مكافأة-	qualified	مؤهّل	essential	ضروري
rewarding	مُرْضٍي/ مُجْزِي-	qualifications	مؤهلات	compassionate	حنون/ عطوف-
nurse	ممرض/ ممرضة-	obvious	واضح	firefighter	عامل إطفاء
nursing	التمريض/ رعاية-	obviously	بشكل واضح	firefighting	إطفاء الحريق
college	كلية	degree	درجة/ شهادة-	fire engine	سيارة الإطفاء
natural	طبيعي	attend	يحضَر	fire truck	سيارة الإطفاء
nature	الطبيعة	attendant	عامل/ خادم-	rely on	يعتمد علي
apply	يتقدم بطلب	flight attendant	مضيفة طيران	reliable	موثوق به
train	يدرب/ يتدرب-	airline	شركة طيران	flexible	مرِن
training	تدريب	airliner	طائرة ركاب	workplace	مكان العمل
stress	توتر/ ضغط/ يؤكد -	imagine: fancy	يتخيل	siren	صفارة
stressful	مُجهِد	trade	صنعة/ حرفة-	sound	صوت يبدو-
skill	مهارة	construct	يشيد/ يبني-	teammate	زميل في الفريق
skillful : skilful	ماهر	construction	تشييد/ بناء-	adapt to	يتكيف مع
communicator	متصل متكلم-	expert	خبير	punctual	دقيق في المواعيد
worry	قلق/ يقلق-	experienced	ذو خبرة/ متمرس-	caring	حنون عطوف-
explain	يفسر/ يشرح-	experience	خبرة/ تجربة-	patient	صبور/ مريض-
medical	طبي	apprentice	متدرب	patience	الصبر
knowledge	المعرفة	apprenticeship	التدريب المهني	interests	اهتمامات
understanding	تفاهم	industry	الصناعة	theatre	المسرح
kindness	طيبة/ عطف-	industrial	صناعي	available	متاح/ متوفر-
laboratory	معمل	local	محلي	immediate	فوري/ عاجل-
subject	موضوع/ مادة-	vast	واسع/ هائل-	baker	خباز
chemistry	كيمياء	route	طريق/ مسار-	office worker	عامل في مكتب
graduate	يتخرج/ خريج-	employ	يوظف/ يستخدم-	plumber	سباك
contract	تعاقد/ يتعاقد-	employer	شركة/ صاحب عمل-	police officer	ضابط شرطة
practical	عملي	employment	وظيفة	assistant	مساعد
practice	تدريب/ تمرين-	unemployment	البطالة	vet	طبيب بيطري
improve	يحسن/ يطور-	option	اختيار	require	يطلب
products	منتجات	optional	اختياري	poster	ملصق
challenge	تحدي يتحدي-	progress	تقدم/ يتقدم-	support	يؤيد/ يساند-
vary	يختلف يتنوع-	expect	يتوقع	hard-working	مجتهد
variety	تنوع	earn	يربح/ يكسب-	reassure	يطمئن/ يهدئ

Definitions

rewarding	doing something that makes you feel good	مُرْضِي /مُجْزِي
apply	make a formal request, usually in writing	يتقدم بطلب-
training	learning skills you need for a job	تدريب
stressful	something which causes worry	مُجهِد
skill	the ability to do something well	مهارة
contract	a legal agreement	تعاقد
practical	relating to real activities and events more than ideas	عملي
qualifications	skills or knowledge that make you eligible for a job or work	مؤهلات
casualty department	emergency room in a hospital	قسم الطوارئ
degree	a qualification you receive when you finish university	درجة علمية
industry	a particular type of business that produces a particular type of goods or services.	الصناعة
construction	the work of building something	تشييد بناء-
attendant	a person whose job involves helping the public	عامل
apprenticeship	is a period of time working in order to learn skills needed to do a job	التدريب المهني

Expressions

popular with	محبوب شعبي-	bring ... sb. / sth .... along	يجلب معه شخصا أو شيئ ا
job opportunity	فرصة عمل	nursing college	كلية التمريض
look for : search for	يبحث عن	feel calm	يهدأ
have a talk	يلقي خطاب	personal statement	بيان شخصي، إفادة شخصية
		job fair : career fair	معرض التوظيف
IT : Information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	play a role in	يلعب دوراً في
suitable for	مناسب ل	meet the deadline	يفي بشيء في موعده المحدد
so far : up till now	حتى الآن	Post Graduate Certificate	شهادة الدراسات العليا
besides : in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	do training	يتمرن
dream Job	وظيفة مثالية مرغوب فيها	Bachelor Degree	درجة البكالوريوس
Central Cairo	وسط القاهرة	at times : sometimes	أحيان ا
care for : nurse	يعتني ب	Egyptian cuisine	المأكولات المصرية

Antonyms

biased	متحيز	non-biased	- متحيز غير محايد
succeed	ينجح	fail	يفشل
success	النجاح	failure	الفشل
local	محلي	international	دولي
vast	- هائل واسع	limited	محدود
honest	- صادق أمين	dishonest	- غادر خائن
caring	عطوف	uncaring	قاسي
patient	صبور	hasty	متسرع

Reading

In this week's article called What's your job? We're talking to two young professionals about their work.

Ali works in the **casualty department** at a busy hospital. He says that, despite the long hours and hard work, the job is incredibly **rewarding**.

Why did you choose to become a nurse?

Well, I've always enjoyed caring for people, so it seemed a natural thing to do. I decided to **apply** to nursing college, did my **training** and then got a job here.

Do you like your job?

Yes, I love it, although it is very **stressful** at times. People are sometimes frightened, so part of my job is to make them feel calm, which can be hard.
Is there anything you don't enjoy?
Not really, although I work from 7 am till 6 pm every day, which is very tiring.
What skills do you need to be a successful nurse?
You need to be a good communicator – a lot of nursing is about listening to people's worries and explaining what the doctors are going to do. You need to have good medical knowledge too, but understanding and kindness are really important.

Reading

Nadia is a scientist and works in a laboratory as a chemist.
Why did you choose to become a scientist?
My best subject at school was chemistry, so I decided to study it at university. After I graduated, I got a two-year **contract** to work here.
What do you like best about your job?
I'm a very **practical** person and a lot of my job is about trying to improve products or develop new ones. I enjoy the challenges and the variety of my work.
Are there any challenges in your job?
Of course any job has challenges. It can sometimes be difficult when you're working on several products and each one has a deadline to meet.
What qualifications do you need to be a successful scientist?
Obviously, you need a degree in Science, but you also have to be good at problem solving. It's important to be able to communicate your ideas to other people too, and that can be difficult sometimes if they're not scientists.

Listening

Narrator: Ahmed
Man: Did you find out about any job opportunities at the job fair, Ahmed ? .
Ahmed : I had a talk with a man from an IT company and he said that there were lots of jobs for young
people in his company. He told me that I needed to have good maths and IT skills but also English. He said that most people in IT used English at work. I asked him if I needed to do a degree in information technology and he said "no".
Narrator: Sarah
Woman :: Hello Sarah. Was the job fair interesting ?
Sarah : Yes, I've decided what I want to do as a job now.
Woman ;: Oh, what's that ?
Sarah : I want to be a flight attendant for an international airline I talked to a woman from an airline
company and she said that it was a really interesting job. She told me that I had to speak at least two other languages as well as Arabic, so I'm going to start learning French. I asked her how many countries she has visited and she said that so far she'd been to over 40 - imagine that !
Narrator: Omar
Fatima: Did you get useful information about work at the fair, Omar ?
Omar: Yes. I'm not going to go to university, but I'm going to learn a trade. I spoke to a man who owns a construction company and I told him that I didn't really like studying and what I wanted to do something practical.
Fatima; Well, you've always been really good at making and fixing things. Mum and Dad agree, too.
Omar: I know. That's what I told him. He asked me whether I had had any work experience and I told him that I'd been helping our uncle make furniture for a few years. He said that would be useful and that I should try and get an apprenticeship in a local company.

Video script

The world of work is vast. There are routes into employment for everyone, with options to study at
university, through apprenticeships or progressing , through work experience.
Job fairs are often held to give non-biased information about many industries. They can tell you about
what qualifications, skills and experience you will need, and you can also find out about what you can
expect to earn. Every job has its challenges and rewards which can affect a person's decision about
whether to pursue a career. Equally, some characteristics are essential for certain jobs. For example, a medical professional must be compassionate, caring and have excellent communication skills

Reading

My Dream Job
Name: Mohammed
Age: 23
Dream job: Firefighter
Skills: You should be:● a team-player ● reliable● a good communicator ● flexible
Workplace: Central Cairo
I always wanted to be a firefighter. When I was a little boy, I played with toy fire engines and sometimes watched the fire engines driving down the streets with their sirens sounding.
I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was outside, exciting and had a lot of variety.
Firefighting can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your **teammates** and also be happy to adapt to different situations when necessary.
Do you **fancy** a **career** as a firefighter? If you want an exciting job helping the community, come and visit me on Stand 21 at the Jobs Fair.
Date: 23 May
Time: 9.00 – 14.00
If you're not interested in firefighting, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along – you never know what career is out there for you!

CV

Name: Nabila El-Soory Age: 24
Address: Central Cairo, Egypt
Dream job: Teacher
Qualifications:
● Post Graduate Certificate in Education:
Bradly College, Oxford, England
● Bachelors Degree in English: Cairo
University, Cairo, Egypt
I am:● punctual● reliable● a good communicator● caring
Experience: I've always wanted a job helping people. I watched many lessons on my training course, and I taught English to young people aged 7–16 years old in the UK.
Personal statement: I am punctual and reliable. I can communicate well with young people, and I believe that I am a patient and caring professional.
Interests: Reading, theatre, and Egyptian cuisine
Availability: Immediate

Direct & Indirect Speech الحديث المباشر والحديث غير المباشر

الحديث المبـــــاشر : هو الذى يقوله صاحبه ويكون موضوع بين أقواس " ...."

الحديث غير المباشر : هو الكلام المنقول و لا يكون موضوع ين الأقواس .

- Ali said " I will go to Alex. " كلام مباشر لأن ....
- Ali said that he would go to Alex . كلام غير مباشر لأن ....

ولكن لابد من معرفة

<u>Ali said</u> " <u>I'm writing a letter</u> "

فعل القول جملة القول

The statement أولاً : الجملة الخبرية

<u>أولاً : إذا كان فعل القول مضارع :</u>

(1) say , says , report , reports /........ تحول إلي say , says

tell , tells تحول إلي say to , says to

(2) نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ (that) ويمكن حذفها .

(3) تغيير الضمائر حسب المستمع و المتحدث .

- Ali says " I will travel to Alex " . (*reports*)
  - ***Ali reports that he will travel to Alex .***
- Mona says " I will go to Alex " (*reports*)
  - ***Mona reports that she will go to Alex .***
- I say " I will put him in the prison . (*report*)
  - ***I report that I will put him in the prison .***

لاحظ جيداً تغير الضمير I فى الأمثلة السابقة :

- They say " we will take part in the race " .
- ***They report that they will take part in the race .***
- The teacher says to Amany " I will punish you if you don't concentrate "
- ***The teacher tells Amany he will punish her if she doesn't concentrate .***

<u>خلى بالك أن</u>

ضمير الفاعل ← يتحول إلي ← ضمير فاعل

ضمير المفعول ← يتحول إلي ← ضمير مفعول

الضمير (you) ← يحـــول إلي ← أى ضمير فاعل أو مفعول

- Hind says to Walaa " I have done my duty "
  - ***Hind tells Walaa that she has done her duty .***
- Rasha says to Samy " I may go to Alex with you "
  - ***Rasha tells Samy that she may go to Alex with him .***

Say , report يأتى بعدها → that فعل + ضمير / فاعل

Say , report يأتى بعدها → فعل + ضمير / فاعل

Tell يأتى بعدها → جملة + that ضمير مفعول / مفعول

Tell يأتى بعدها → جملة + ضمير مفعول / مفعول

- Hind (tells – says) me that she is clever .
- Hind (tells – says) that she is clever .
- Hind (tells – says) she is clever .

نلاحظ فى جميع الأمثلة السابقة تغير الضمائر إلى :

I	→	he, she , I	Me	→	him , me
We	→	they , we	Us	→	them , us

1- Ali says " I'm playing tennis " (**reports**)
- ……………………………………………………………………………
2- Ali says to Walaa " I'm playing Tennis " (**tells**)
- ……………………………………………………………………………
3- Mona says " I have done my homework " (**confirms**)
- ……………………………………………………………………………
4- " I eat meat every day " Ramy says . (**claims**)
- ……………………………………………………………………………
5- " We will travel abroad " they say . (**assure**)
- ……………………………………………………………………………
6- Ali tells Hind he can study English easily . (**says**)
- ……………………………………………………………………………

ثانياً : إذا كان فعل القول ماضى :

1- Said to → told Said → said , reported

(2) يتم حذف الأقواس ونربط بـ that ويمكن حذفها (3) يتم تغيير الضمائر حسب المستمع والمتحدث

(4) تغير الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضى المقابل (5) يتم تغيير الظروف الزمنية .

- Rania said " I will travel to Alex "
  - *Rania reported that he would travel to Alex .*

مضـــــــــــــــارع	←	بسيط ، مستمر – تام ماضى بسيط – مستمر – تام
ماضى بسيط	←	ماضى بسيط ، تام
ماضـــــــى مســـــتمر	←	ماضى مستمر / ماضى تام مستمر
ماضى تام		ماضى تام

must	**الزام**	**Must+inf/ had to/would have to+inf**
must	**النصح**	**Must+inf /should have to+p.p**
must	**الاستنتاج**	**Must+inf/must have+p.p**
Needn't +inf	**الضرورة**	**Needn't+inf / didn't have to / wouldn't have to+inf**

am , is , are → was , were . * have , has → had

❖ will , can → would , could …. * Played → played /had played

- Amani said to Ola " I have cooked a delicious meal "
  - *Amani told Ola that she had cooked a delicious meal .*
- Hany said to Noha " I will go to the party "
  - *Hany told Noha that he would go to the party .*
- Ramy said " I'm reading a story "
  - *Ramy reported that he was reading a story .*
- Ali said " I didn't steal the money "

Claimed / asserted / reported هو نفس الحل :

- *Ali claimed that he hadn't stolen the money . /Ali claimed that he didn't steal the money*
- Hanaa said " I will help you if you help me " Ali
  - *Hanaa told Ali that she would help him if he helped her .*

وماذا عن تغير الأزمنة وكذلك الظروف لابد أن يكون فعل القول ماضى ؟ نعم لابد أن يكون ماضى

this →	that	tomorrow →	the following day / the next day
these →	those		
today →	that day	next week →	the following week / the next week
tonight →	that night		
so →	thus	The day after tomorrow →	In two days' time
now →	Then/at that time	yesterday →	the day before / the previous day
ago →	Before/earlier		
here →	there	last week →	the week before / the previous week
Yet →	by then		
	The day before yesterday →		Two days before

- Ali said " I'm reading now "
  - *Ali said that he was reading then .*
- Hind said " I will help you tomorrow "
  - *Hind reported that she would help me the following day*
- Samia said to Alaa " I went to Alex yesterday "
  - *Samia told Alaa that she had gone to Alex the day before*
- Mna said to Marwa " I will build a charity next week "
  - *Mona told Marwa that she would build a charity the following week .*

1- I'm doing my homework now . (*Ali told me*)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

2- She said to us " the headmaster gave me a prize " (*told*)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

3- Mr. Nabil said " I'll sell a car of mine " (*reported*)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

4-They said " we lost our money " (*reported*)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

5- He said " I'll be free tomorrow " (*reported*)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

☺ عزيزي الطالب قد يكون فعل القول غير say أو report على حسب معنى الجملة.

أفعال يأتي بعدها to+inf أو جملة that+ :

Promise, agree, threaten, disagree, assert, offer, intend, advised , offer , warn

أفعال يأتي بعدها v_ing أو جملة that+ :

Admit, suggest, deny
suggest that فاعل Should + inf

"يمكن حذف should "

أفعال أخرى غير say يأتي بعدها جملة that + :

Explain, shout, claim, remark, think, complain, allege, state, mention, announce, add, indicate, suppose, believe, cry, reply, and answer

1-He (promised – threatened –**explained**) that his uncle was encouraging him to find another job.

-فالمعنى فى الجمله السابقه هو أنه أوضح أو شرح

2-I (complained _promised _**admitted**) that he had made a mistake the night before.

-وهنا تعنى الجمله معنى الاعتراف

3-I(complained –**promised** – threatened) that I would contact Mr. Farag on Saturday morning.

-وهنا تحمل الجمله معنى الوعد

4-The prime minister (apologized – suggested –**claimed**) that the government had made the right decision.

-وفى هذه الجمله المعنى يتطلب كلمة زعم

1-Omar (suggested- **complained**) that the exam was difficult.
2-My father (complained- threatened- **promised**) that he would take us to the park.
3-He (intended- **claimed**- told) he was an officer in the army.

عزيزي الطالب :قد تصادف أكثر من فعل في الماضي وهنا قد تتحكم الراوابط أو المعنى أو الكلمه الداله:

-He told me that he (**had been working** – would work) as a sales assistant before he left his job.

وهنا تتذكر قاعده:

ماضى تام	**before**	ماضى بسيط
بسيط	**after**	ماضى تام

-They said that they (were seeing – **could see**) the mountain after they had reached the top of the tower.
-Kareem apologized for losing the pen that I (**had lent** – would lend – was lending) him.

-وهنا الحدث الاول هو الاقراض وبعدها فقده

-Nahla said it (**would be** _had been _was) great if they could go to England in Summer.

-وهنا الالتزام بقاعدة if

if 2	ماضى بسيط	Would +inf
if 3	ماضى تام	Would have +p.p

-He admitted that he (could make –would make – **had made**) a mistake the night before.

وهنا المتحكم الكلمة الدالة

-She explained that she (had hoped- **was hoping**) to visit me the following week.
-He agreed that he(hadn't told- **wouldn't tell**) anyone what I had said

-وهنا الذي يساهم في الحل هو فعل قول مع المعنى العام للجمله

-My father said that he (hadn't bought – **wouldn't buy**) me new mobile until I had passed my next exam

متى لايتم تغير الأزمنة والظروف :

1- إذا كان فعل القول مضارع

- Ali says " I'm playing tennis well "
  - ***Ali says that he is playing tennis well .***

2- إذا كان المتحدث قائل الكلام منذ فترة قصيرة أى

Has just said	**said just now**
Said a moment ago	**said right now**

- Ali said a moment ago " I will go soon "

-*Ali said a moment ago that he will go soon .*

3- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة ثابتة

- "The Nile **is** the longest river in the world."
- The teacher **told** us that the Nile **is** the longest river in the world.
- She said , "All human beings have two eyes and two ears."
- She said that all human beings have two eyes and two ears .

4- الازمنه حالة **I wish / If only / If الثانية والثالثة** وكذلك it's time

- Ali said " If only I had a car " ⟶ ***Ali reported that if only he had a car .***
- *Ali said to Samy "it's time you went home "*
- *Ali told Samy that it was time that he went home*

5- لا يوجد تحويل للأزمنـــة في الجمل التي تحتوي علي

- **had better - used to - should -**
- **ought to - mustn't ,could – would – might**

- - "You **had better** to be inside in such bad weather."
- - He said that I **had better** to be inside in such bad weather.

6- الماضي البسيط ليس بالضرورة أن يتحول في الغير مباشر إلي ماضي تام و بخاصة إذا كان الماضي البسيط مستخدما مع فعل أخر ماضي في علاقة زمنية معينة

- - He said, 'She **came** round to my house while I **was doing** my shopping.'
- - He said that she **came** round to his house while he **was doing** his shopping.

7-مع أزمنة المستقبل يمكن التغير أو عدم التغير.

- اذا كان المستقبل قد مر هنا يتم التحويل و لكن إذا لم يمر لا يتم التحويل . □

- Ali said that he (**will** – would) come tomorrow .
- Ali said that he (will – **would**) come the following day .

-هناك مجموعة مصطلحات تاتى مع say\tell ولكن في الجمل التي ليس لها علاقة بالمباشر.

say	Tell
say good morning \evening, etc. **say** something\nothing ,etc. **say** a few words , say so, **say** no more , say a prayer, **say** for certain , etc.	**tell** the truth , tell a lie , tell a joke **tell** (someone)the time, **tell** some one's name , tell a story, **tell** a secret, tell someone the way, **tell** the difference , etc.

تحذف عبارات الموافقة أو الأتفاق مثل (Yes/ Sure/ Of course....) ويستخدم فعل إبلاغ يدل على الموافقة أو الأتفاق مثل:

☺ لا يوجد تحويل لصيغة الماضي من الأفعال الناقصة:

Would- could- might- should- would rather- had better

-"You **should study** hard, Samar", said mum. (مباشر)

- Mum told Samar that she **should study** hard. (غير مباشر)

-agreed/ approved/ answered in affirmative……etc.

-"**Yes**, I have received your e-mail, " said Sama. (مباشر)

-Sama **agreed** that she had received my e-mail. (غير مباشر)

☺تحذف عبارات الرفض أو عدم الأتفاق مثل (No/ Sorry....) ويستخدم فعل إبلاغ يدل على الرفض أو عدم الأتفاق مثل:

-denied/ disapproved/ answered in negative……etc.

-"**No**, I didn't see Ali today," said Ahmed. (مباشر)

-Ahmed **denied** that he had seen Ali that day. (غير مباشر)

السؤال بفعل مساعد

إذا كان فعل القول مضارع

Say/says	wonder/s – inquire/s ask/s/want(s) to know/as/asks
Say(s) to	Ask /asks

2- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ (whether / if)   3- تحويل الجملة الاستفهامية إلى جملة خبرية

4- تغير الضمائر حسب المتحدث و المستمع

- Mona says to Ali" can you play chess ?" (asks)
  - *Mona asks Ali if he can play chess .*
- Hind says to Mohamed " have you done the homework ?"
  - *Hind asks Mohammed if he has done the homework .*
- Walaa says to me " will you go to Alex ?"
  - *Walaa asks me if I will go to Alex .*
- Mai says to Rania " Do you practice sports ?"
  - *Mai asks Rania if she practices sports .*

ولكن ركز فى المطلوب فى الجملة الآتية :

- Ali says to Mona " Did you play tennis ?" (ask / inquires)
  - ***Ali asks Mona if she played tennis . /Ali inquires if Mona played tennis .***

عندما يطلب منك **wonder / inquire** أو نستخدم الاسم مكان ضميره

- Rania says to Heba " Do you have a car ?" (asks)
  - *Rania asks Heba if she has a car .*
- Rania saks to Heba " Did you go to he party "
  - *Rania asks Heba if she went to the party .*

لاحظ : إذا كان فعل القول مضارع ووجدنا :

Do	تحذف	ونضع التصريف الأول / الأول + s
Does	تحذف	ونضع التصريف الأول + S
Did	تحذف	ونضع التصريف 2

1- " Is he playing tennis ?" (I wonder)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

2- He says to Mona " have you played the match ?" (asks)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

3- Ali says " Do you speak English, Mona ?" (asks)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

4- Ali says " Did you visit the museum, Hala ?" (asks)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

إذا كان فعل القول ماضى :

Said →	wondered, inquired , wanted to know , asked
Said to →	asked

2- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ whether / If   3- تحويل الجملة من استفهامية إلى جملة خبرية

4- تغير الضمائر   4- تغير الأزمنة والظروف إذا كان فعل القول ماضى .

- Ali said to samy " can you go with me, tomorrow ?"
  - *Ali asked samy if he could go with him the following day/ the next day*
- Mona said to Heba " Are you busy now ?"
  - *Mona asked Heba if / whether she was busy then .*
- Ali said to me " Did you go to the party?"
  - *Ali asked me if I went / had gone to the party .*
- Rasha said to him " Do you have a mobile ?"
  - *Rasha asked him if he had a mobile .*

لاحظ : إذا كان فعل القول ماضى ووجدنا (does – do – did) نحذف (do – does) ونضع الفعل فى التصريف الثانى ، نحذف (did) ونضع الفعل فى التصريف الثانى أو had + P.P

1- " Is he still working in the garden ?" (I wondered)
- ....

2- He said to me " could you lend me your camera ?" (He asked me)
- ....

3- He said to Mona " have you done the homework ?" (asked)
- ....

4- Marwa said " Will you travel abroad ?" (asked him)
- ....

5- Rasha said to me " Did you play with them ?" (asked)
- ....

6- Ali asked me if I would go to Alex . (said)
- ....

If/ whether

1- لا تتبع if ب or not مباشرة

Mona asked (if-**whether**) or not I had studied E.
Mona asked (**if**-whether) I had studied E. **if كلا الكلمتين صحيح والافضل**
Mona asked (if-**weather**) I had studied E or not. **whether كلا الكلمتين صحيح والافضل**

Choose he correct answer :

1-He asked me…………..my parents knew I was here.
a-who b-weather c-whether d-what
2-She…………her whether she had a pen.
a-asked b-told c-said d-wondered
3-She wondered if we……………English.
a-should speak b-speaks c-will be spoken d-can be spoken
4-I asked him if he often……….poems.
a-wrote b-is written c-was written d-written
5-She asked me…………we should go now.
a-when b-that c-whether d-weather
6-I asked my brother…………..he had revised well for the exam.
a-if b-that c-whether d-which
7-I asked him…………..he could tell me about his career.
a-that b-to c-if d-weather
8-I wonder if………..your mobile phone.
a-can I use b-could I use c-I used d- I can use
9-I asked him…………..it was true that he had helped students at Oxford University.
a-which b-whether c-what d-where
10-I asked Andy if he……….talk about Spring-Rice's writing.

a-can **b-will** **c- had** **d-could**

11- He asked her…….she was well-organized.

a-that **b-if** **c-where** **d-which**

12-He asked me……….that his sister had been ill.

a-if I knew **b-that I knew** **c-whether did I know** **d-when did I know**

13-My father wanted to know………..chess.

a-if I played **b-that I played** **c-where did I play** **d-when did I play**

14-Hany asked Fady whether…………to the museum the next day.

a-could he go **b-would he go** **c-can he go** **d- he could go**

15-The teacher …………whether we had found the homework easy or difficult.

a-inquired **b-acquired** **c-required** **d-told**

16-I wondered if I…………..one of his poems.

a-can read **b-will read** **c-could read** **a-am reading**

17-Mrs. Osama asked me if my parents………..where I was.

a-knows **b-knew** **c-has known** **d-know**

17-Ahmed asked me where………..the day before.

a-I had gone **b-I go** **c-had I gone** **d- did I go**

18-The teacher asked Ahmed…………..all the way on foot.

a-if he came **b-if did he come** **c-would he come** **d-if does come**

19-My father wanted to know………..chess.

a-if I played **b-that I played** **c-where did I play** **d-when did I play**

السؤال بأداة الاستفهام

*وهو بنفس طريقة تحويل السؤال بفعل مساعد ولكن بدلاً من الربط بـ If أو whetherنربط بأداة لاستفهام

- Ali said to Mona " how long have you lived , here ?"
  - ***Ali asked Mona how long he had lived there .***
- Rania said to me " where did you go?"
  - ***Rania asked me where I had gone .***
- Rasha said to him " why do you go to the club ?"
  - ***Rasha asked him why he went to the club .***
- Mona said to them " when did you go to the party yesterday ?"
  - ***Mona asked them when they had gone to the party .***
- Ali asked me how long I had lived in Alex . (said)
  - ***Ali said to me " how long have you lived in Alex ?"***
- Ali asked me about my name . (***said***)
  - ***Ali said " What's your name ?"***
- Ali asked me about my hobbies . (***said***)
  - ***Ali said " what are your hobbies ?"***
- Ali asked me about my health . (***said***)
  - ***Ali said to me " How are you?"***

1- " What would you like to have ?" (***The waiter asked me***)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

2- " Where are you going ?" (***Ali asked Mona***)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

3- " How did you solve the problem " (***Ali asked me***)

- ……………………………………………………………………………

ملوحظه خفيفه للطلبه الظريفه

if / whether الصيغه الاتيه ليست كلام غير مباشر ولكن يأتي الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد
can/ could you tell/ show/..........me if / whether / جملة خبرية +اداة
Do you know +if /n whether / جملة خبرية + اداة

-**Could you tell me** where the station is?
-**Do you know if** Mona has children?

order تحويل الأمر

- يكون فعل القول (told / ask / beg / order) وبعدها (to / not to)
- Ali said to me " open the door " (*ordered*)
  - ***Ali ordered me to open the door .***
- Hind said to me " Don't smoke much " . (*told*)
  - ***Hind told me not to smoke much .***

طلب الإذن

- ويكون بنفس الطريق فعل القول (**tell / ask**)
- Heba said to me " can you open this box "
  Heba asked me to open that box . /Heba asked me if I could open that box

Don't forget

• **encourage ... to / not to + inf**	• **warn ... to / not to + inf**
• **ask ... to / not to + inf**	• **advise ... to/not to + inf**
• **allow .... to / not to + inf**	• **order .... to / not to + inf**
• **agree to + inf**	• **tell .... to / not to + inf**

• **Suggest + v-ing**	• **Suggest that** فاعل **should + inf**
• **Recommend + v-ing**	• **Recommend that** فاعل **should + inf**

Drill 6 : Change the following sentences from DIRECT to INDIRECT SPEECH:
1. Mary said, “The train will probably arrive on time.”
- ....
2. He said, “I have to finish this report by five o’clock.”
- ....
3. The doctor said, “Mr. Smith will improve quickly.”
- ....
4. William said to me, “I am leaving in the morning.”
- ....
5. The teacher said, “Everyone has to write a composition.”
- ....
6. John said, “I saw that movie on Wednesday.”
- ....
7. Mary said to John, “I cannot go to the movie with you.”
- ....
8. John said, “I have finished studying my lesson.”
- ....
9. Mary said, “John speaks English well.”
- ....
10. William said to me, “I will not see Mr. Jones until Tuesday.”
- ....

EXERCISES ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer

1. My brother .... to Toshiba and they offered him a job
a) relied b) replied c) applied d) supplied
2. The .... for this work is today, so I really need to get on with it.
a) underline b) offline c) online d) deadline
3. Many traditional teachers are in bad need of .... to adapt to the new educational system.
a) training b) raining c) draining d) gaining
4. My old job was a nightmare but this one's truly a .... job.
a) dream b) ambiguous c) dim d) sleep
5. We .... our desire to hire a manager with a lot of experience.
a) distress b) stressful c) stress d) press
6. Lack of .... and poor nutritional quality of foods limits peoples' ability to eat healthfully.
a) specialty b) similarity c) poverty d) variety
7. You must accept the contract. There are no other ....
a) adoption b) chooses c) operations d) options
8. Hospitals must be ready to deal with .... of motorway accidents.
a) casualties b) physicians c) doctors d) specialists
9. I think that teaching is hard work, but it's ....
a) award b) reward c) rewarding d) awarding
10. Nursing the practice or profession of .... for the sick and injured
a) daring b) caring c) looking d) searching
11. He has a lot of good .... but being organized isn't one of them.
a) qualities b) quantities c) equalities d) disabilities
12. The two nations reached an .... on oil transport.
a) understanding b) argument c) standing d) underground
13. Women's salaries are low compared to what men .... for the same work.
a) beat b) earn c) gain d) win
14. This is not a private dinner so please invite your friends and bring .... a bottle of Cola.
a) out b) along c) on d) up
15. On the plane, the flight .... brings you a drink after your meal.
a) intend b) attend c) attendant d) assistant
16. After a three-year .... in the trade, he could work as a mechanic.
a) apprentice b) relationship c) partnership d) apprenticeship
17. Street children decide to leave home for .... reasons.
a) cancerous b) generous c) various d) variable
18. He gave up his job so that he could .... his mother at home.
a) dance b) nurse c) look for d) purse
19. Try not to .... - there's nothing you can do to change the situation.
a) marry b) carry c) worried d) worry
20. Don't sign any .... before examining its conditions carefully.
a) contract b) contact c) attract d) subtract
21. Finding a solution to problems is one of the greatest .... faced by scientists today.
a) canals b) channels c) advantages d) challenges
22. I read his biography to find .... his life.
a) around b) about c) out d) out about
23. Dinner will be ready in half an hour - just be ....!
a) hungry b) patient c) patience d) hasty
24. The .... is coming tomorrow to install the new washing machine.
a) plumber b) attendant c) vet d) baker
25. You're a nurse, so can I ask your .... opinion on bandaging ankles?
a) confession b) profession c) amateur d) professional
26. She has a lot of .... experience in dealing with these kinds of problems.

a) practice b) practical c) critical d) optical

27. Can't we .... someone as an assistant to help with all this work?

a) employer b) employee c) employ d) employment

28. Mona wanted to find a way to repay his friend's ....

a) kindly b) kindness c) cruelty d) sickness

29. My sister has finished her training and she is now a .... engineer.

a) experience b) profession c) qualified d) liquefied

30. My brother is a plumber. He has taken on an .... to learn the trade.

a) assist b) apprentice c) vet d) police officer

31. ...., what she did was wrong, but I don't think she deserved to be punished.

a) Obvious b) Obviously c) Clear d) Variously

32. He has qualified with a .... in medicine from the University of Cairo.

a) mark b) grade c) agree d) degree

33. You have to have such a lot of .... when you're dealing with kids.

a) cruelty b) patience c) patient d) impatient

34. If the eyes are badly injured, seek .... medical care.

a) delayed b) immediately c) relaxed d) immediate

35. My uncle is a very .... person. All the family like him.

a) comparison b) compassionate c) comrade d) introvert

36. A job .... is an event where employers offer information about their companies to people who are looking for jobs

a) pair b) fair c) palace d) department

37. It's unreasonable to expect your child to behave in a .... way if you behave selfishly.

a) violent b) unkind c) selfish d) caring

38. The money will be distributed .... among the winners.

a) equation b) equality c) equally d) equal

39. Working for a big .... can be good, as there are often opportunities for promotion.

a) employable b) employ c) employer d) unemployment

40. A teacher's .... lies in his ability to communicate quite complex ideas very simply.

a) skill b) skillful c) talented d) drawback

41. The .... went on for days as crews tried to get the wildfires under control.

a) fire alarm b) firewood c) firefighting d) fire gun

42. A / An .... is someone who is able to talk about their ideas and emotions in a way that other people understand.

a) talkative b) alligator c) illustrator d) communicator

43. Of course Maher won't be late; you know how .... he is

a) lazy b) punctual c) confident d) compassionate

44. A .... of the camel is its ability to live for a long time without water.

a) characterize b) character c) characteristic d) characters

45. Not everyone wants to work in offices and many young people with manual skills go into ....

a) trade b) trader c) tread d) raid

46. Liverpool only lost the game because the referee was ....

a) base b) based c) non-biased d) biased

EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer

1. "I know you can do it . Take the exam again." - He .... her to take the exam again.

a) threatened b) encouraged c) promised d) denied

2. "The accident was all my fault." - She .... that the accident was her fault.

a) admitted b) denied c) offered d) asked

3. "Well done ! You have got great exam results." - She .... him on getting great exam results.

a) suggested b) congratulated c) accused d) begged

4. "I want to speak to the manager! - NOW!" - He .... to speak to the manager at once.

a) said b) told c) asked d) threatened

5. "Shall we spend a quiet evening at home?" - She .... spending a quiet evening at home.
a) warned b) offered c) suggested d) wanted
6. "Oh please ! Let me go to the party , mum." - She .... mum to let her go to the party.
a) begged b) advised c) promised d) ordered
"No, it wasn't me. I didn't eat the biscuits." - He .... eating the biscuits.
a) wondered b) allowed c) admitted d) denied
7. "The bags are heavy. Can I give you a hand?" - She .... to give him a hand with the bags.
a) offered b) suggested c) wanted to know d) said
8. "Sara must take a rest." -The doctor said Sara ……………a **rest**
a) took b) have to take c) had to take d) could take
9. The gardener …………….me why I hadn't bought a new axe.
a) wondered b) inquired c) asked d) wanted to know
10. The air hostess asked if we could fasten…………….. seat belts.
a) his b) her c) our d) ours
11. " I have not done it today. " - I explained that I had not done it.………………
a) today b) a day c) that day d) this day
12. I……………. that I had to wait in the office for another two hours.
a) was said b) has said c) told d) was told
13. I will finish this picture tomorrow" - Esraa said that she would finish that picture…………….
a) day before b) yesterday c) tomorrow d) the following day
14. Reham ……………..she was a doctor.
a) wanted b) asked c) said d) told
15. He allowed me ………………..his phone.
a) if I used b) that I used c) used d) to use
16. The teacher……………. he would punish me if I didn't keep quiet.
a) advised b) promises c) told d) threatened
17. Mr Omar asked me what I was doing when he …………….me.
a) has seen b) saw c) will seed d) sees
18. Hend ………….. me to show her the bank.
a) wanted b) said c) advised d) warned
19. Hussein declared that he was going to see his parents…………………..
a) tomorrow b) the following day c) yesterday d) the day before
20. Mona says that she …………………me tomorrow.
a) helped b) had helped c) can help d) help
21. The manager…………….. to pay me on Friday.
a) told b) threatened c) promised d) required
22. The interviewer asked her……………… she had experience in sales.
a) although b) while c) if d) weather
23. Maha has just remarked that she ………….yet.
a) decided b) had decided c) has been decided d) hasn't decided
24. Malak promised she………………..as soon as the plane landed.
a) phoned b) will phone c) would phone d) phones
25. He wondered if iron .... a metal.
a) had been b) has c) is d) has been
26. Hadi asked me what……………. , but I didn't tell him.
a) my name is b) was my name c) is your name d) our name will
27. Hany said he ……………………on holiday the following week.
a) will be going b) will go c) was going d) is going
28. Amira said that………………… gone to bed early that night.
a) she has b) she had c) she was d) she had been
29. Tarek's mother asked him what time he …………….home from school.
a) is b) will be c) would be d) being
30. The students asked the teacher what they ……………to help stop global warming.
a) do b) can do c) did d) could do

31. Hani asked his friend why he…………… so quickly.
a) is walking b) walk c) walking d) was walking
32. Nadia said her father…………………. ill the day before.
a) had been b) had c) has been d) is
33. Huda asked Lamia when she……………. home the previous day.
a) had got b) get c) did get d) was getting
34. “Where do you live?” asked Huda. - Huda asked me where ……………..lived.
a) you b) I c) your d) me
35. “Why are you laughing?” Sami asked her. - Sami asked her why ……………. laughing.
a) is she b) she is c) was she d) she was
36. “If I was younger, I would marry her. - Ali said that if he ……….younger, he would marry her.
a) is b) was c) has been d) had been
37. “I was with my aunt last week.”’- Aya …..that she had been with her aunt the previous week.
a) asked b) inquired c) admitted d) advised
38. I wanted to know ……………….. the school was.
a) that b) if c) whether d) where
39. Many of you ………………me how long people spent on a computer each day.
a) said b) told c) asked d) wondered
40. “What did you do in town?” - Ola wanted to know what…………… in town.
a) did he do b) he has done c) he had done d) had he done
41. “Who ………..to yesterday?”. - Heba asked who we had been talking to the day before.
a) were you talking b) you were talking c) have you been d) you had talked
42. “When will you be back?” - Their father asked them when………. be back.
a) they b) they will c) would they d) they would
43. “How have you been feeling?” asked Azza. - Azza asked how……………. feeling.
a) had I b) I had c) I had been d) had I been

TRANSLATION

1) Translate into Arabic:

1-إن تحديد الهدف بدقة واختيار الوسائل المساعدة هي البداية الحقيقية لتحقيق الطموحات.

…………………………………………………………………………………………… ……………………………

2) Translate into Arabic:

1. You can express your personal opinion freely regarding a certain subject, on condition that youshouldn’t insult others or cause harm to them.

facilitate يسهل construction إنشاء resources موارد	utilities مرافق potentials إمكانات involvement مشاركة	public عام educational تعليمي regarding بشأن	set a goal يحدد هدف corner stone حجر تدفق الزاوية flow

TEST TEN

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Nile is polluted. It's no longer a .... source of safe drinking water.
a) capable b) sociable c) deniable d) reliable
2. She's been doing exercises to become stronger and more ....
a) deniable b) flexible c) available d) possible
3. At present the organization has to rely on young, ... graduates.
a) experiences b) experience c) inexperienced d) experienced
4. University graduates often have little idea of what to do when they begin ....
a) employment b) unemployment c) movement d) pavement
5. They donated a lot of money finance the .... of a cancer hospital.
a) relation b) obstruction c) destruction d) construction
6. With her .... and experience, she seems to be ideally suited to the job.
a) skilled b) qualifies c) qualifications d) qualified
7. To what .... can parents are responsible for a child's behaviour?
a) degree b) decree c) agree d) disagree

8. It can be difficult to .... to life in a different city.
a) adapt **b) adopt** **c) adoption** **d) adaptation**
9. The .... at the gas station cleaned the car for us.
a) manager **b) scientist** **c) attendant** **d) oculist**
10. The .... apologizes for long delays at check-ins today.
a) online **b) guideline** **c) offline** **d) airline**
11. My father told Maher that he was sure he…………………. him there the week before.
a) has seen **b) had seen** **c) sees** **d) would see**
12. Reem says that Nora .... later.
a) will come **b) would come** **c) had come** **d) came**
13. The interviewer asked him when……………….. home that day.
a) did he get **b) he gets** **c) had he got** **d) he had got**
14. He said that ………………home at about six o'clock in the evening.
a) he gets **b) he has got** **c) had he got** **d) he had got**
15. Hala asked Amal who ……………………invite to her party.
a) she will **b) would she** **c) she should** **d) should she**
16. At the weekend, my friend asked me what I……………. since we last met.
a) have done **b) did** **c) had been doing** **d) was doing**

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Should we work all the time without having rest or entertainment? The answer is that we can't go onworking without stopping, from time to time and at regular intervals, to have some rest and somerecreation. If we did we could make mistakes and the quality of our work might get worse. An**overworked** person may end up by losing the ability to think clearly and by having no energy to goon working. Sleep is one of the ways in which nature renews our energy. Sports and games are alsoessential for brain workers who stay in closed offices and do not have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Such activities as swimming and walking may do them a lot of good. So, we should notwaste our weekends. They should be made full use of and spent in the open. Having forgotten allabout our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next dayto work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on man's health and consequentlyon his performance.

a) Choose the correct answer:

1. Sleep is necessary for ....
a) The children b) the sick people c) the old people d) all people
2. Overworking results in ....
a) loss of energy b) more energy c) more experience d) sound thinking
3. The underlined word "**overworked**" means having to work ....
a) too little b) quite much c) too much d) quite little
4. Brain workers do not have a good chance to exercise their muscles as they.............. .
a) play chess instead b) stay in closed offices
c) are good at dangerous sport d) practice physical activities in closed offices

b) Answer the following questions:

5. Why should people stop work every now and then?
6. What happens if one goes on working after one gets tired?
7. How can people make good use of their weekends?

Translate into Arabic:

We should know that we cannot change our country in just one day or can eradicate the wrong thingsalone as this needs efforts of all the citizens of the country.

Translate into English:

طموحي في المستقبل أن أعمل في مجال السياحة لكي أمارس التحدث باللغة الانجليزية.

....

Unit 11 Amazing people Part 1 Lesson 1/2

amaze	يدهش	impact	تأثير / يؤثر
amazed	مندهش	involve	يتضمن
amazing	مدهش	complain	يشتكى
champion	بطل رياضى	complaint	شكوى
championship	بطولة رياضية	Kung Fu	الكونغ فو
win a medal	يكسب ميدالية	positive	ايجابى
disable	يسبب اعاقة	negative	سلبى
disabled	معاق	metal disc	قرص معدنى
disability	اعاقة	especially	خصوصا
terrible = horrible	فظيع	media	الاعلام
compete	ينافس	organization	منظمة
competitor	منافس	challenge	تحدى / يتحدى
competition	منافسة	lift	مصعد / يرفع
competitive	تنافسى	market	سوق
competitiveness	تنافسية	marketing	التسوق
affect	يؤثر على	cycle	يركب دراجة
effect	تأثير	cycling	ركوب دراجات
international	دولى	colleague	زميل
national	قومى	flight	رحلة طيران
achieve	يحقق	owner	مالك
achievement	انجاز	passenger	مسافر
wheelchair	كرسى متحرك	snowboarding	التزلج على الجليد
stay fit	يبقى لائق	the same **as**	نفس الشىء
powerlifter	لاعب رفع اثقال	similar **to**	مشابه ل
powerlifting	لعبة رفع اثقال	award	جائزة / يمنح جائزة
illness	مرض	award-winning	الفائز بالجائزة
polio	شلل الاطفال	battle	معركة / يكافح
Spina bifida	تشقق العمود الفقرى	prove	يثبت / يبرهن
muscles	عضلات	proof	برهان / دليل
athlete	لاعب قوى	strong	قوى
athletics	العاب القوى	strength	قوة
Paralympics (n)	البارليمبية	strengthen	يقوى
Paralympic (adj)	باراليمبى	stamina	القدرة على التحمل
Paralympian (n)	لاعب باراليمبى	come first	يأتى فى المركز الاول
get **around**	يتجول	come second	يأتى فى المركز الثانى
race	سباق	(be) able **to +inf.**	قادر على
racer	متسابق	unable **to**	غير قادر على
events	أحداث	give talks	يلقى خطب/أحاديث
medical condition	حالة طبية	retire **from**	يتقاعد من
podcast	نشرة صوتية	determine	يصمم

special	خاص/ مميز	determination	تصميم
active	نشيط	inspire	يلهم
activist	ناشط	inspiration	الهام
chance = opportunity	فرصة	physical	بدنى / جسدى
guest	ضيف	physically	بدنيا
join	ينضم الى	mental	عقلى
campaign	حملة	mentally	عقليا
campaigner	مدافع / مؤيد	fight (**fought**)	يقاتل
notice	يلاحظ / ملاحظة	fighting	قتال
sociology	علم الاجتماع	promote	يرقى / يؤيد
support	يساند / مساندة	promotion	ترقية
equal	يساوى / مساوى	preserve	يحفظ
equally	بمساواة	sacrifice	يضحى / تضحية
brilliant	رائع	highs and lows	نجاحات و اخفاقات
recommend	يوصى	outstanding	بارز / مميز
recommendation	توصية	do paper work	يقوم باعمال كتابية
awful	فظيع	range **of**	مجموعة من
make a difference	يصنع أختلاف	dedicate = devote	يكرس
make changes	يصنع تغيير	dedication	تكريس
actually	فى الواقع	guess	يخمن
in charge **of**	مسئول عن	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
responsible **for**	مسئول عن	cycler	راكب دراجة
ramp	منحدر	cycle	يركب دراجة
issue	قضية	success	نجاح / ناجح
promise	يعد / وعد	arrange an interview	يرتب مقابلة شخصية
campus	الحرم الجامعى	add **to**	يضيف الى
exist	يوجد	make it difficult	يجعله صعب
existing	موجود	refer **to**	يشير الى
excellent	ممتاز	member **of**	عضو فى
area	منطقة	benefits **of**	فوائد ل
ensure	يؤكد	battle **against**	يكافح ضد
successful **in/at**	ناجح	take part **in**	يشارك فى

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	synonym	antonym
amazing	astonishing	believable
compete	contest / rival / challenge	surrender / assist / agree / share
competition	contest / race / rivalry	peace / alliance / harmony
achieve	acquire / excel	fail / lose / miss

achievement	success/triumph/ accomplishment	nonachievement / mess/disaster / catastrophe
personally	privately / individually	generally
complaint	annoyance / grievance	acceptance
disabled	helpless / invalid / paralyzed	able / firm / healthy
difference	distinction / variation	similarity
inspire	stimulate	discourage / depress
physical	bodily	mental
suitable	appropriate / fit	unsuitable / unfit / inappropriate

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1	*campaign قتال / معركة/حملة *begin a campaign يبدأ حملة *launch a campaign يطلق حملة *lead a campaign يقود حملة *campaign (for/against) يناصر / يقوم بحملة لصالح/ضد	1-The police **began/ launched a campaign** to reduce road accidents. 2-She **led** a successful **campaign** against the closure of the library. 3-The **campaign** failed to achieve its objectives.
2	***Olympics =Olympic Games** الالعاب الاوليمبية ***Olympian** لاعب اوليمبى	*The London **Olympics** (**Olympic** Games) were held in 2012. *He is a great **Olympian** of all time.
3	***Paralympics = Paralympic Games** الالعاب البارليمبية ***Paralympian** لاعب بارليمبى	The **Paralympics** (**Paralympic** Games) are an international athletics competition for people who are disabled.
4	***compete for** من اجل **/to** لكى / **against** ضد **/with** مع **/in** فى ***competitor** منافس/ متسابق ***competition** منافسة / مسابقة	*My shop is **competing for** attracting customers. *My shop is **competing to** attract customers. *Weight lifting **competition** starts tomorrow. *There are 20 **competitors** for the gold medal.
5	***play** الرياضات التى بها كرة ***go(v+ing)** الرياضات و الانشطة منتيهية ب ***do** رياضة فردية بلا أدوات	*__play__ (football / tennis / volleyball…..) *__go__ (swimming / sailing / windsurfing / diving) *__do__ (karate / boxing / weightlifting / judo) *__play__ / __do__ (sports)

ملحوظة

sport	Sports person
cycling	cycler
powerlifting	powerlifter
running	runner
swimming	swimmer
diving	diver
windsurfing	windsurfer
snowboarding	snowboarder
sailing	sailor

Reading Text

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a champion in Kung Fu and won many medals in the sport at secondary school. After a terrible car accident, he now has a disability which means he has to use a wheelchair. Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped his love of sport. He decided to practise a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very good at wheelchair tennis. He has competed in many international wheelchair tennis competitions and became one of the best wheelchair tennis players in Egypt. That is an amazing achievement, but Mahmoud has not stopped there. He also helps people who are in wheelchairs to stay fit, and gives talks to help other people with disabilities.

Amany Ali

Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic powerlifter who won a bronze medal in the 2016 Paralympic Games in Brazil in 2016. Amany had an illness called polio when she was younger and this affected the muscles in her feet. She did not start powerlifting until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport. She achieved her Paralympic success in Brazil aged 40, and at a very difficult time. Her father died two days before the competition, so she wanted to win the medal for him. She also came fourth in the London Paralympic Games in 2012.

Tanni Grey-Thompson

Tanni Grey-Thompson is a British Paralympian wheelchair racer who has a medical condition called Spina bifida. She is unable to walk, so she uses a wheelchair to get around. Tanni first competed in the 400 metres and wheelchair basketball at the Paralympics in Seoul in 1988. Tanni won 16 Paralympic medals in athletics events from the 100 metres up to the 800 metres, including 11 gold medals. Since she retired from athletics in 2004, Tanni has worked for many different organisations which help people, especially disabled people and women, to enjoy the benefits of sports.

Workbook

Complete the text with these words.

achieve compete disability medals muscles wheelchairs

Wheelchair tennis Some amazing athletes **1** .... in different sports even when they have a **2** .... For example, some play tennis in **3** .... The playing area is the same as for other tennis competitions, but the

players need to have strong **4** .... in their arms to move around and to hit the ball. The best players enter the Paralympic Games, but few **5** .... as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands. She won four gold **6** .... between 2000 and 2012.

Many sports end in –ing, and the name of the person who does the sport ends in –er. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

Olympic sports Many Olympic sports have always been part of the modern games, such as 1 ....(**cycle**) and 2 ....(**swim**). Some of the most famous Olympians are 3 ....(**run**) such as Usain Bolt and Mo Farah. New sports are sometimes added to the games. For example, 4 ....(**windsurf**) became an Olympic Sport in 1984 and 5 ....(**snowboard**) in 1998. Other sports are not part of the Olympic Games, for example, 6 ....(**powerlift**). That means that great Egyptian 7...............(**powerlift**), like Sherif Othman, can only compete in the Paralympics.

Listening Text

Nadia: Hello everyone and welcome to the podcast. Every week we talk to a different guest about their job. Today we have a very special guest who's a charity activist from Egypt. Her name is Leila El-Baz. Leila, who has been an equal opportunities campaigner for almost ten years now, is here to talk about trying to change the world. Thank you very much for joining us, Leila.

Leila: Great to be here, Nadia.

Nadia: So tell us a little bit about yourself, Leila. Where are you from?

Leila: I'm from Alexandria, which is a city in the north of Egypt, but I work in Cairo now.

Nadia: What did you study?

Leila: I studied sociology which I found really interesting.

Nadia: And how did you get into working for charities supporting equal opportunities? It's not something that everyone does for living, is it?

Leila: No, I guess it isn't, but it's a brilliant job. I would recommend it to all young people because you can really make a difference – that's why I love it so much. I started campaigning for disabled people when I was at university actually. One of my best friends was disabled and she used a wheelchair. I noticed that she was having lots of problems just trying to get from one classroom to another, or from the library to the cafeteria. There were steps everywhere and hardly any lifts or ramps to help disabled people get from one floor to the next.

Nadia: Wow. That's awful.

Leila: Yes, I know, so my friend and I decided to try to make changes in our university. We asked the teachers to talk to the people who were in charge of the university about the issue and they did.

Nadia: What happened next?

Leila: Well, after about a year, we got four new lifts and lots of ramps. The university also promised to think about disabled students when they build new parts of the campus or change existing buildings.

Nadia: That's excellent.

Leila: When I finished studying, I got a job at a charity which helps disabled young people find jobs. That was really interesting.

Nadia: But, now you campaign for equal opportunities for a wider range of people – not just people with disabilities – is that right?

Leila: Yes, that's right. Now I work for an organisation called Open Eyes which campaigns in lots of different areas. We try to ensure that people who are different to other people, in one way or another, still have the same chances in life.
Nadia: That sounds like great work to be doing, but is there anything you don't like about your job?
Leila: Well, I don't like it when you think you're going to succeed, but, in the end, you don't. And, of course, not all of our work is exciting. We have to do paperwork too, you know!

Video Script

To become an award-winning Paralympian is an outstanding achievement. These athletes battle against physical disabilities to prove their strength, stamina and determination. Competing in the Paralympics often means a life dedicated to training and often requires a lot of sacrifices to be successful. Even simple tasks can be difficult with a disability which is why they are so inspiring. Many Paralympians inspire people to persevere to achieve their dreams. They often dedicate their time to promoting their sport and helping young people find

Exercises on Lesson 1

Choose the correct answer:

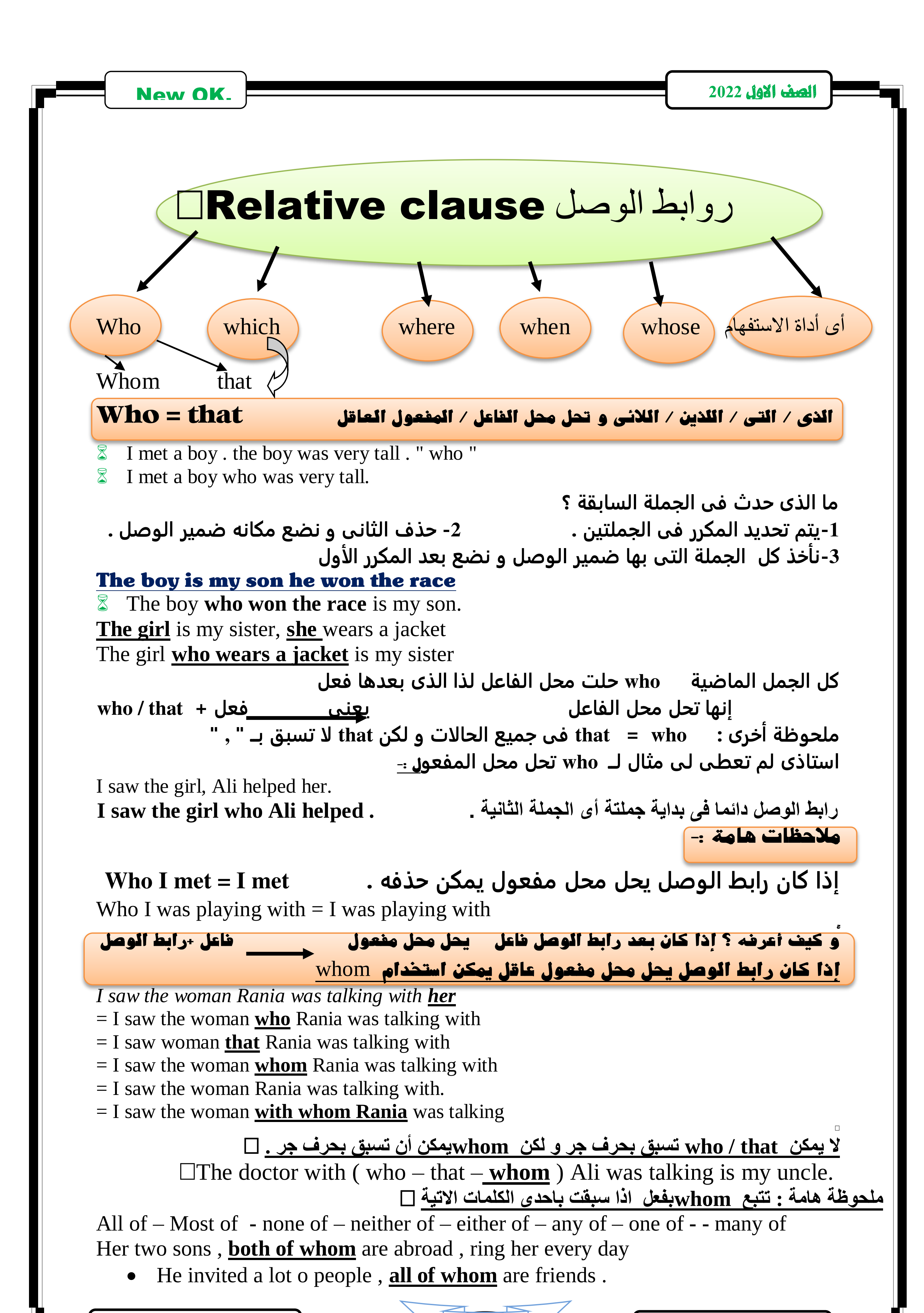
1-His…….has made him a virtual prisoner in his room.
(inability – ability – skill – disability)
2-The hotel has improved facilities for the disabled. There are new lifts and …..ramps.
(wheel - clamp – wheelchair – stools)
3-I felt that the medal was my greatest……….
(achievement – attainment – agreement – disagreement)
4-We felt miserably when we didn't ………our aim.
(score – achieve – shave – miss)
5-………is unarmed Chinese marital resembling karate.
(Wrestling – Sword – King fu – Powerlifting)
6-A/An…is a small metal disc which is given as an award or as a prize in sporting events.
(model – medal – module – array)
7-……..is a serious disease which makes people unable to use their legs.
(Allergy – Polio – Measles – Earache)
8-……..is a form of weight lifting in which contestants compete in the dead lift.
(Wrestling – Sword – King fu – Powerlifting)
9-A/An….is a statement in which you express your dissatisfaction with particular situation.
(complaint – comprehension – anger – burglary)
10-……..is a physical or mental condition that restricts a person's movement.
(Unability – Ability – Disability – Lack)
11-The world's best athletes……..in the Olympic Games.
(comply – fight – complete – compete)
12-Riding a bicycle is good for developing the leg…….. **(flesh – muscles – masks – bones)**
13-The Olympic…..were accused of taking performance enhancing drugs.
(athletes – astronauts – astrologers – astronomers)
14-How would ……people escape in an emergency?
(enabled – unable – disabled – denied)
15-There have been a huge number of entries this year's poetry………

(complaint – campaign – commute – battle)
16-I've set myself a serious of goals to ……..by the end of the year.
(shave – achieve – carry – gain)
17-If anything is not OK, you can……….a complaint. **(break – make – have – do)**
18-She has……….a disability since the accident. **(broken – had – done – made)**
19-The word "amazing" gives the opposite meaning to………
(ordinary – wonderful – great – fantastic)
20-Farid Osman looks forward to competing……..the Olympics. **(to – for – in – of)**
21-Children……..disabilities need special care. **(as – to – up – with)**
22-All modern hotels have both steps for walkers and…….for wheelchairs.
(streets – wires – ramps – shops)
23-Doing regular exercise makes your……….strong and more flexible.
(hearing – sight – toes – muscles)
24-As a / an ………., he won many gold medals.
(Olympic – Olympics – Paralympic – Paralympian)
25-……..follow particular food programmes and do regular exercise.
(Athletes – Athletics – Recorders – Records)
26-Most football players feel sad when they………… **(retire – apply – campaign – score)**
27-……..makes you follow particular food programmes and do regular exercise.
(Athletes – Athletics – Recorders – Records)
28-My brothers…………scuba diving in Hurghada last week.
(played – went – did – made)
29-He is an………student. He answers all questions accurately.
(amazed – amaze – amazing – amazement)
30-It is impossible fo me to miss a sporting……..in my town.
(incident – event – accident – happening)
31-Al Zamalek was knocked out of the…….in the quarterfinal in Egypt cup last year.
(race – campaign – event – competition)
32-If we lost this match, we would be out of the……….
(championship – practice – training – media)
33-……..is a serious disease of the nerves in the spine, that often results in someone being permanently unable to move particular muscles.
(Spina bifida – Polio – AIDS – Stomachache)
34-………sports is a must for all people to keep healthy and fit.
(Making – Doing – Solving – Committing)
35-Disabled people can play tennis….wheelchairs. **(in – on – for – at)**
36-The twins, Hossam and Ibrahim Hassan retired….playing football 14 years ago.
(of – from – with – in)
37-I promised to refer……the matter. **(to – for – by – on)**

Exercise on Lesson 2

1-My cousin wants to be a/an…….to be able to save the world from terrorism.
(athlete – powerlifter – runner – activist)
2-Cairo governorate began a………to stop people throwing rubbish in the streets.
(campaign – flight – war – speech)
3-We are respect Dr Magdi Yacoub because he…..his life to his country.
(participated – dedicated – voted – brought)

4-Environmental……accused the factories owner of dumping waste into the Nile.
(competitors – fighters – communicators – activists)
5-……..are needed at exits and entrances for wheelchair users.
(Stairs – Cliffs – Ramps – Swings)
6-Mohamed Salah is a/an………player to watch at football matches.
(amazed – amazing – amazement – amaze)
7-The issue of "unemployment" has been discussed in the…**(public – internet – media – radio)**
8-A lot of……..around the world send aid to flood victims.
(competitors – campaigners – charities – refugees)
9-Every team needs a leader who is able to……….its members.
(push – conspire – inspire – press)
10-The government should………for supporting scientific research.
(help – collect – look – campaign)
11-While we were waiting for the train, we………a handbag under a bench.
(noticed – knew – looked – founded)
12-The kids seem to fight……..each other constantly. **(by – to – with – at)**
13-I started a campaign……equal rights between women and men. **(to – in – with – for)**
14-All I need is a/an…..to show the coach my talent and ability.
(competition – choice – opportunity – achievement)
15-My son was……..when he saw his friend jump up for 2 metres.
(amazed – amazing – amazement – amaze)
16-Are the players mentally and……prepared to play a tough game?
(biologically – physically – physics – health)
17-We can say someone……….a difference, noise or a request.
(does – achieves – makes – runs)
18-Physical and mental are………. **(antonyms – synonyms - homophones – rhymes)**
19-The word "amazing" gives an opposite meaning to……….
(ordinary – wonderful – great – fantastic)
20-The cold weather makes it……….for us to go swimming.
(difficult – difficulty – difficultly – easily)
21-I added some lemon……my soup. **(to – of – from – at)**
22-He is good at……….. **(cycle – cycler – cycling – cycled)**
23-He is a good………… **(cycle – cycler – cycling – cycled)**
24-All people in society are……..in rights and duties.
(biological – equal – medical – physical)
25-It is fair to give students equal…………
(salaries – opportunities – colleagues – employees)
26-I like excitement and I always look for new……
(departments – challenges – lifts – charities)
27-He can't see. He's……… **(disabled – disability – dumb – deaf)**
28-Amazing is to…….as starting to beginning.
(surprise – surprised – surprising – surprises)
29-He is an………in the field of human rights.
(active – activate – activist – activation)
30- He wants to win a gold medal in……….
(athlete – athletic – powerlifter – powerlifting)



Relative clause روابط الوصل

Who – which – where – when – whose – أى أداة الاستفهام

Whom – that

Who = that الذى / التى / اللذين / اللائى و تحل محل الفاعل / المفعول العاقل

- I met a boy . the boy was very tall . " who "
- I met a boy who was very tall.

ما الذى حدث فى الجملة السابقة ؟

1-يتم تحديد المكرر فى الجملتين . 2- حذف الثانى و نضع مكانه ضمير الوصل .

3-نأخذ كل الجملة التى بها ضمير الوصل و نضع بعد المكرر الأول

The boy is my son he won the race

- The boy **who won the race** is my son.

The girl is my sister, **she** wears a jacket

The girl **who wears a jacket** is my sister

كل الجمل الماضية who حلت محل الفاعل لذا الذى بعدها فعل

إنها تحل محل الفاعل يعنى **who / that + فعل**

ملحوظة أخرى : who = that فى جميع الحالات و لكن that لا تسبق بـ " , "

استاذى لم تعطى لى مثال لـ who تحل محل المفعول :-

I saw the girl, Ali helped her.

رابط الوصل دائما فى بداية جملتة أى الجملة الثانية . **I saw the girl who Ali helped .**

ملاحظات هامة :-

إذا كان رابط الوصل يحل محل مفعول يمكن حذفه . **Who I met = I met**

Who I was playing with = I was playing with

و كيف أعرفه ؟ إذا كان بعد رابط الوصل فاعل يحل محل مفعول ← فاعل +رابط الوصل

إذا كان رابط الوصل يحل محل مفعول عاقل يمكن استخدام whom

*I saw the woman Rania was talking with **her***

= I saw the woman **who** Rania was talking with

= I saw woman **that** Rania was talking with

= I saw the woman **whom** Rania was talking with

= I saw the woman Rania was talking with.

= I saw the woman **with whom Rania** was talking

لا يمكن **who / that** تسبق بحرف جر و لكن **whom** يمكن أن تسبق بحرف جر .

The doctor with (who – that – **whom**) Ali was talking is my uncle.

ملحوظة هامة : تتبع **whom** بفعل اذا سبقت باحدى الكلمات الاتية

All of – Most of - none of – neither of – either of – any of – one of - - many of

Her two sons , **both of whom** are abroad , ring her every day

- He invited a lot o people , **all of whom** are friends .

- The house was full of boys , **ten of whom** were grandchildren

نستخدم that عندما نشير الى عاقل وغير عاقل ☐

I told my friend about the writers and the countries (who – **that** – which) I admire

Which = that و تحل محل الفاعل / المفعول الغير عاقل

Wesam ate the **orange**. **It** was on the plate.

♦Wesam ate the orange **which** was on the plate.

who نفس الكلام الذى نقوم به على

The book is mine. **It** was on the plate table.

♦The book **which** was on the table is mine.

The tree has a lot of fruit, **it** stands there .

♦The tree **which** stands there has a lot of fruits.

لاحظ أننا يمكن وضع حرف الجر قبل which

The **story** is mine , Ali was reading in **it**

♦The story **which** Ali was reading **in** is mine.

♦The story **in which** Ali reading is mine.

كيف يتم حذف رابط الوصل

1- إذا كان رابط الوصل يحل محل مفعول

I met the boy **who** Ali told me about

.I met the boy Ali told me about

2- P.p = فعل مبنى للمجهول + رابط الوصل او/ p.p. = be + p.p + رابط الوصل

the woman who is called Mona is my aunt .

♦the woman **called** Mona is my aunt .

-3 V - ing = فعل مبنى للمعلوم + رابط الوصل

The passengers **who travelled** to America arrived at the airport.

♦The passengers **travelling** to America arrived .

The girl **who stole** my money is my friend's sister .

♦The girl **stealing** my money is my friend's sister.

The cotton (grow – **grown** – which have grown) in Egypt gives a good yield.

لأنها اختصار **which is grown** الذى يزرع .

1-People ……… in gold often make a lot of money .

a) trade b) traded c) trades d) **trading**

لأنها اختصار الجملة **who trade = trading** فعل مبنى للمعلوم

2- The person she is ………… now is the manager of Fruco .

a) visiting it b) visiting that c) **visiting** d) visiting him

Who she is visiting now = **she is visiting now.** ليس الاختيار ناحية رابط الوصل فالجملة هى

يعنى : رابط وصل كان يحل محل المفعول و تم حذفه ☐

That ⟵ لا تسبق بـ (,)

1- The person I like listening to **him** is my grandfather .

Who I like listening to

و هنا يتم حذف him لأن أساس الجملة

و أيضا تم حذف who لأنها تحل محل مفعول .

2- The person **which** the company belongs to is an accountant**(who / whom / that)**

3- My uncle , that is a business man , lives in Tanta . (**who**)

لا تسبق that بـ (,)

4- Ahmed , which has many customers in India, well come tomorrow . " **who** "

خلى بالك يمكن استخدام that أفضل من who / which فى الحالات الآتية:-

1- **إذا سبقت بتنضيل من الدرجة الثالثة .**

This is the most beautiful girl (where – **that**) I have ever met.

2- **إذا سبقت بـ it was / it's / this is / all**

All the information (that – which) he told was false.

3- **إذا سبقت بـ any-every-no-none-much-few-little-only-the first- the only**

1-I'll tell you everything (which – **that**) you need.
2-He said nothing (which – **that**) makes you laugh.
3--Ten pounds is all (which- **that**) I have today.
4-Ahmed was the last one (who-**that**) helped me.

بينما اذا جاء بعد الكلمات السابقه of نستخدم **which – whom**

-I met five men, all of (**whom**- that) are polite.
-I bought three watermelons, just one of (that- **which**) I ate.

وقد تسبق which بحروف جر متنوعة حسب الفعل الذى يليها مثل

- I asked him a question **to which** he answered quickly — **answer** → **to**
- She received a prize **on which** we congratulate her — **congratulate** → **on**
- He said something **by which** he means another thing — **mean** → **by**
- He did something **for which** I thanked him — **thank** → **for**
- The crime **of which** he was accused was dangerous — **accuse** → **of**

1- I went to the place (**in** – on) which I was born.
2- This is the mountain (in – **on**) which snow rests .
3- He asked me a question (**to** – on) which I replied I don't know.
4- He says he is poor (by – in) which he means he can't buy a car .
5- He won a prize (by – **on**) which we should congratulate him.
6- He said to me some words (to – **for**) which he should apologize

لاحظ التعبيرات الاتيه مألوفه في الترجمه:

During which	الذي اثنائه	**through which**	الذي من خلاله
According to which	الذي بناءا عليه	**for which**	الذي من اجله
by which	الذي بواسطته	**from which**	الذي منه
on which	الذي عليه	**after which**	الذي بعده
before which	الذي قبله	**some of which**	بعض منها

.

Where — حيث تحل محل المكان

I went to Cairo. I was born **in it**

لاحظ أننا نحذف حرف الجر مع where

- I went to Cairo **where** I was born .

= I went to Cairo **which** I was born **in** .

لاحظ الربط بـ which

= I went to Cairo **that** I was born **in** .
= I went to Cairo **in which** I was born.

أى الفارق بين which و where حرف الجر و لكن فى بعض الحالات فقد يكون الفارق المعنى (حيث) أو (الذى)

- Aswan is the place (**where** – which) I live .
- Aswan is the place (where – **which**) I like most .
- This is the place (**where** – which) I feel most comfortable .
- This is the place (where – **which**) my children like most .

The place where = where

Cairo is (the place – **where**) I was born .

when **و تحل محل الزمان الذى يسير على where يسير على when**

I don't forget **the day**. I met Ali **on it.**

I don't forget the day **when** I met Ali.

I don't forget the day **which** I met Ali **on**

I don't forget the day **on which** I met Ali.

I don't forget the day **that** I met Ali **on** .

Ramadan is the month (**which** – when)affects me much

The time when = when

1973 is (the time – **when**) we beat Israel

Whose **و تحل محل الملكية و معناها الذى مكانه و لا بد ان يكون بعدها اسم**

Whose friend الذى صديقه **whose father** الذى والدة

I visited **the man**, **his** father did in the accident .

- I visited the man **whose** father did in the accident .
- I met the boy, **his** hair looked like the girl's .
- I met the boy **whose** hair looked like the girl's

يمكن استخدام that / who فى الصيغة الآتية و لكن that أفضل

- It was Ali (who - that) broke the window .

ملحوظة للقواعد ☐

غالبا لا نجد حرف الجر إلا قبل whom / which و لكن لا بد من المرونة مع الجملة مثل :☐

- I went to (which – that – whom – **where**) I was born.

و هنا يوجد كلمة place قبل where و لكن حذفت ☐

- I saw a student, one of (who – whom – when – **whose**) problems is shyness.

What = the thing (s) which وتستخدم بمعنى الشئ الذي

ويأتي قبلها 1- حرف جر 2-فعل 3- او تأتي في بدايه الجمله

- -I listen to (which- **what**)you are saying
- -she told me (which- **what**) I need.
- -(**What**- Which) annoys me is that some students.
  - ✱I haven't received **what** I ordered yet.

The reason = the reason that +جملة

-he is working all night is **the reason** (what- **why**) he is tired

-**The reason that** he is angry **is that** his friend has insulted him

- يمكن استخدام (why-what) كضميرى وصل كالآتي:-
  - ✱I'd like to know the reason **why** he decided not to come.
- لاحظ أن what تأتي بعد فعل وليس بعد اسم بمعنى **the thing which** او سؤال غير مباشر
- إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف **who/ which +v.to be** ولا نضع شيئاً:-
  - ✱Hossam Hassan, the famous footballer, won many prizes. (who was)

جمل بها افكار جديدة

1-He travelled to America…………….he learnt a lot.

a-where is which b-**which is where**

c-what is which d-which is what

2-He was ill……………………he didn't come to the meeting.

a-where is why b-which is where

c-**which is why** d-why is which

3-the reason why = why

-I want to know…………you have come late.

a-when b-**why** c-which d- what

4-He was the first one………………..come to the conference.

a-which b-what c-whom d-**who**

5-He was the first one…………to the meeting.

a-comes b-has come c-come d-**coming**

6-He was the first one………………to the meeting.

a-**coming** b-comes c-come d-whom come

7-I have three pens, All of ………..are expensive.

a-then b-**which** c-who d-why

8-I have three pens. All of …………….are expensive.

a-**them** b-which c-who d-why

9-I saw a lot of people and cultures…………benefited me a lot.

a-who b-whom c-**that** d-which

10-He was ill,…………..why he didn't come to the party.

a-**that's** b-which c-what is d-when is

11-I met my uncle…………..hopes to me are a lot.

a-who b-whom c-**whose** d-when

12-I met my uncle…………..hopes to me a lot.

a-**who** b-whom c-whose d-when

13-I'll refer to…………killed your friend.

a-**who** b-which c-whom d-that

2-:Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:- practice

1- Dr Aisha used to go with her father to meetings ……… she learned to read and write.

a) which b) at where c) at which d) at that

2- Name the actor ……… plays Salah El Deen.

a) which b) whose c) whom d) who

3- The nurse,.. responsibility is to look after children, has worked at the hospital for ten years.

a) who b) which c) what d) whose

4- Dr Aisha went to Cairo University, ……… she studied Arabic language and literature.

a) which b) where c) that d) in where

5- It is said he was a man ……… to have the sight of an eagle and a courage of a lion.

a) who appeared b) he appeared c) that appears d) and appears

6- I'm hoping to study science at university, after … I'd like to work as a research scientist.

a) where b) when c) who d) which

7- The town ……… I was born is in the north of Egypt.

a) which b) by which c) in which d) after which

8- These days, women have as good an education as men, ……… I think is a good thing.

a) where b) when c) who d) which

9- The person ……… does most of the cooking in our family is my mother.

a) where b) when c) who d) which

10- We often visit our aunt in Tanta ……… isn't far from Cairo.

a) where b) which c) whose d) who

11- 1937 was the year ……… Victoria became queen of Britiah.

a) where b) when c) who d) which

12- I've just read a newspaper article …… the life of a famous woman is described in detail.

a) which b) by which c) in which d) after which
13- Mr Ayman ……… is a taxi driver, lives on the corner.
a) where b) that c) whose d) who

3-Exercises on Grammar

1. Emily Dickinson did not like to leave her home................ she wrote most of her poems.
a) where b) when c) in that d) whose
2. Emily Dickinson was a very famous, American poet..... poems were published after her death
a) whose b) where c) that d) who
3. Tanta is the city.................. my grandparents were born.
a) which b) where c) who d) when
4. Abdel-Tawab Youssef, ...books have been translated into many languages is a famous children's writer
a) who b) whom c) whose d) when
5. This is the book .... my favourite character goes to the Arctic.
a) which b) that c) in which d) to which
6. Omar, ... mother is a scientist, always does well in the science tests.
a) whose b) who c) who's d) for whom
7. The shop, ... I visited last week, has some great souvenirs.
a) when b) where c) who d) which
8. I could not decide................ to wear to the wedding party.
a) which b) what c) that d) who
9. Jomana, ... won several prizes, is really good at tennis.
a) who's b) whose c) what d) which
10. This is the hotel .... I stayed when I was young.
a) which b) what c) where d) when
11. This is a book................. the hero travels to space.
a) which b) where c) in which d) at which
12. Saturday,.................... we always play football, is always a busy day for me.
a) that b) on which c) where d) what
13. Yesterday, my brother and I played a long game of tennis,............ made me very tired.
a) which b) what c) where d) when
14. The nurse,....... must look after young children, has worked at the hospital for ten years.
a) who b) whose c) which d) what
15. The person.................does most of the cooking in our family is my mother.
a) whom b) where c) who d) which
16. 1837 was the year.................Victoria became queen of Britain.
a) in that b) what c) on which d) when
17. I've just read a newspaper article.............the life of a famous woman is described in detail.
a) in that b) on which c) in where d) in which
18. My sister went to London University,.................she studied history.
a) where b) whom c) what d) which
19. *Lord of the Flies* is a story............... a group of school boys are shipwrecked on an island.
a) in that b) on which c) in whom d) in which
20. She asked me where I had been,..................... I replied, "I can 't tell you."
a) to that b) to which c) on which d) in which
21. Tomorrow, I'm going to a meeting .... we're going to discuss women's role in society.
a) at which b) on which c) for which d) to which
22. They said something very cruel, ...I think they should apologise.
a) for which b) to which c) at which d) on which
23. He lives in the street .... all the houses are surrounded by high fences.
a) whom b) where c) who d) which
24. Does he know the girl................ John is talking?
a) to which b) to whom c) for who d) with which

25. The person................he is negotiating is the Chairman of a large company.
a) to whom **b) with whom** **c) that** **d) with that**
26. It is a club .... many important people belong.
a) into which **b) for which** **c) when** **d) to which**
27. Cleopatra, ... was very beautiful, was the last pharaoh of Egypt.
a) which **b) what** **c) that** **d) who**
28. Woman's Day .... marks an important event in 1909 is on March 8th.
a) whom **b) where** **c) which** **d) who**
29. Alexandria .... my mother was born is in the north of Egypt.
a) where **b) whom** **c) on which** **d) which**
30. I spoke to the worker...................... my office.
a) was cleaning **b) who were cleaning** **c) whom was cleaning** **d) cleaning**
31. Did you like the room ....?
a) we stayed in **b) who we stayed in** **c) that we stayed in it** **d) where we stayed in**
32. Wael apologised for doing something ....,
a) wrong **b) which wrong** **c) is wrong** **d) which were wrong**
33. I always like to buy cotton..................... .
a) is from Egypt **b) that from Egypt** **c) from Egypt** **d) where is from Egypt**
34. I drive a car................. in Germany.
a) that made **b) that were made** **c) when was made** **d) made**
35. We all admire the girl .... elegant clothes.
a) wears **b) wearing** **c) wore** **d) that wearing**
36. Can I talk to the man .... on the bench near you?
a) is sitting **b) whom sits** **c) who sitting** **d) sitting**
37. Most of the parents................ to the conference did not come.
a) who invited **b) who was invited** **c) were invited** **d) invited**
38. The brother................ lives in Moscow is coming home on Friday.
a) who **b) whom** **c) which** **d) whose**
39. Fruit.................... ripens on the tree tastes best.
a) when **b) that** **c) where** **d) what**
40. The city………. I was born in is in the south of Egypt.
a) that **b) in which** **c) when** **d) what**
41. Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my brother,……. made me very tired.
a) when **b) these** **c) which** **d) for which**
42. This is the bank .... was robbed yesterday.
a) which **b) who** **c) where** **d) whom**
43. A man ……. mobile was ringing did not know what to do.
a) who **b) which** **c) that** **d) whose**
44. The President visited China .... he was warmly welcomed.
a) where **b) whose** **c) which** **d) who**
45. A police officer................ car was parked at the next corner stopped and arrested them.
a) who **b) which** **c) that** **d) whose**
46. The dog barked ……….. it saw itself in a mirror.
a) which **b) what** **c) who** **d) when**
47. She couldn't understand ……….. he said.
a) what **b) why** **c) who** **d) that**
48. She couldn't understand anything……….. he said.
a) what **b) why** **c) who** **d) that**
49. Sham El-Nesiem is a day .... marks the beginning of the spring.
a) in which **b) which** **c) who** **d) whose**
50. Egypt is the land ……….. people of different cultures can live peacefully.
a) who **b) whose** **c) where** **d) which**

Part 2 Lesson 3-4 Vocabulary

make a complaint	يقدم شكوى	make noise	يصدر ضوضاء
complain	يشكو	noisy	ضوضائى
soup	شوربة	regards	تحيات / تمنيات
soap	صابون	get home	يعود للمنزل
apologise	يعتذر	look forward **to**	يتطلع الى
apology	اعتذار	hear **from**	يسمع من
narrator	الراوى	interest **in**	اهتما فى
narrate	يروى	interested **in**	مهتم ب
bother	يزعج / يضايق	qualified **for**	مؤهل ل
make sure	يتأكد	do training	يقوم بتدريب
turn **down**	يخفض(صوت)	receive training	يتلقى تدريب
turn **up**	(يرفع (صوت)	sorry **for**	أسف على
manager	مدير	sorry **about** that	أسف على ذلك
book	يحجز / كتاب	take place	يحدث
perhaps	ربما	reply **to**	يرد على
repair	يصلح / اصلاح	respond **to**	يستجيب ل
play	مسرحية / يلعب/يعزف	response **to**	رد على
undercooked	غير مطبوخ جيدا	speak **to**	يتحدث الى
meal	وجبة	suitable **for**	مناسب ل
department	قسم	madam	سيدة / سيدتى
employee	موظف	sign **off**	يسجل خروج من موقع/خروج
employer	صاحب عمل	access	مدخل/وصول/يدخل
staff	هيئة العاملين	celebrity	شخص مشهور
sales	مبيعات	diversity	تنوع / تعدد
negotiate	يتفاوض	weight	وزن
hole	فتحة / ثقب	weigh	يزن
loud	عالى	whatever	أيا كان
loudly= aloud	بصوت عال	windsurfing	ركوب الامواج
polite	مؤدب	break a record	يحطم الرقم القياسى
impolite	غير مؤدب	hold a record	يحمل الرقم القياسى

afraid	خائف / متأسف	make a request	يطلب
interview	مقابلة/يجرى مقابلة	take a lift **up**	يصعد بالاسانسير

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	synonym	antonym
negotiate	arrange / bargain / settle	carry out / command /regulate
response	answer / reply / reaction	request / question
support	provide / aid	neglect
repair	fix / mend	damage / break
polite	mannerly / civilized	impolite / rude / naughty
loud	noisy / blaring	calm / quiet
bother	annoy	satisfy / please
diversity	variety / variation	uniformity
suitable	appropriate / fit	unsuitable / unfit / inappropriate
sign-off	finish	sign-in / opening

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1	***interview** مقابلة شخصية/اذاعية/صحفية ***appointment** موعد/ميعاد ***meeting** اجتماع ***conference** مؤتمر	1-I have an **interview** for a job. 2-I have an **appointment** to see the dentist. 3-The prime minister arrive for the **conference**. 4-We arranged a **meeting** to solve the problem. 5-The famous actor had an interview last night.
2	***colleague** زميل عمل = ***workmate** ***classmate** زميل دراسة	1-At work, my **colleagues** are very friendly. 2-Wael was my **classmate** at primary school.
3	***take part in= participate** ***take place=happen** ***take someone's place**	1-The story **took place**(happened) in the 19th century. 2-Althletes **took part in** the Olympics. I **took** my father's **place** while he was abroad.
4	***Olympics / Paralympics +** فعل جمع ***physics / maths / politics / gymnastics .....etc. +** فعل مفرد	1-Where are the **Paralympics** going to be held in 2024) 2-**Physics** is my favourite subject. 3-**Maths** looks difficult for me.

Listening Text

Narrator: One

Woman 1: Excuse me, I'd like to make a complaint. My soup is cold.

Woman 2: I do apologise. I'll make sure you get another soup which is hot.

Narrator: Two

Old Man: I'm sorry to bother you, but the music is really loud.

Man 1: I'm sorry about that. I'll make sure my son turns the music down.

Narrator: Three Old

Woman: I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Woman 3: I'm afraid she's out at the moment. Can I help you?

Old Woman: Yes, the problem is that my train is now two hours late. How am I going to get home this evening?

Woman 3: I'm sorry about that. Perhaps we can book a taxi for you.

Workbook Text

Conversation 1

Hana: Excuse me, I'd like to make a complaint. My phone doesn't work.

Assistant: I do apologise. Perhaps we can repair it.

Conversation 2

Hany: I'm sorry to bother you, but you're very tall. I can't see the play.

Man: I'm sorry about that. I'll change places with my wife. She is shorter.

Conversation 3

Heba: I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Waitress: I'm afraid he's out at the manager, please.

Heba: Yes, the problem is that my meat is undercooked.

Waitress: I'm sorry about that. We will give you a new meal.

Exercise: Complete the conversation using these words to make a complaint.

(afraid / can / complaint / do / perhaps / sorry / speak)

Man: I'd like to **1** ....to the manager, please.

Receptionist: I'm **2** ....she's out at the moment. **3** ....I help you?

Man: Yes. I'd like to make a **4** ....

Receptionist: I'm **5** ....about that. What is the problem?

Man: The window in my hotel won't close and it is very noisy outside.

Receptionist: I **6** .... apologise. **7** ....we can find you a different room.

Part 2 Lesson (3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer:

1-When I started my new job, all my……were very helpful.
(colleagues – colleges – classmates – neighbours)
2-I look forward to hearing…..you. this means I hope to receive news from you.
(of – from – to – with)
3-When were you when the accident took………?
(part – a part – a place – place)
4-Companies need highly qualified…, so they provide them with many training courses.
(stiffs – stuffs – crews – staffs)
5-Please, turn the music down, it……….me.
(interests – improves – bothers – neglects)
6-I……..a holiday for a fortnight in Paris. One week isn't enough to enjoy the city.
(booked – kept – preserved – retrained)
7-My father is responsible for the accountancy…………in a big company.
(service – department – apartment – office)
8-The company's manager is very serious and strict with the………..
(employers – employees – employment – employs)
9-I want to…..a complaint to the restaurant manager because the soup is cold.
(do – make – have – give)
10-We still haven't received a reply…..our offer.
(for – to – with – from)
11-This jacket is very small. It is not really suitable…me.
(to – with – for – at)
12-I think you are qualified…..the job in our company.
(to – with – for – at)
13-Everyone …….him in his campaign for justice.
(supports – lets – allows – gives)
14-Are you coming to the football….after school?
(lecture – exercise – training – scene)
15-The company always……all the new employees to use the new computer system.
(knows – arranges – trains – manners)
16-The room was very……and my father found it hard to concentrate on his work.
(nosy – noisy – calm – quiet)
17-They said something very cruel for which I think they should………
(think – thank – apologise – organise)
18-All companies should employ clever propagandists to increase………
(industries – production – products – sales)
19-This runner……the world record for long-distance running.
(makes – does – holds – sends)
20-He…….the world record and won the gold medal.
(broke – received – did – ran)
21-The word "suitable" is an antonym of………..
(appropriate – inappropriate – fit – wonderful)
22-"Diversity" and "variety" are……..
(antonyms – opposites – synonyms – homophones)
23-As well as……for a walk, he also played tennis.
(go – going – to go – goes)

24-Everyone……waiting for your speech.
(has – have – is – are)
25-Whatever…….you make, I will support you.
(choose – chose – chosen – choice)
26-A/An…..is another word for the closing of an email.
(request – sign out – access – sign-off)
27-If you want to join our group, just make a…………..
(request – benefit – celebrity – condition)
28-……….is a title for a woman you don't know.
(Mr – Dr – Professor – Madam)
29-The internet has given us……to all information we need.
(course – medals – collection – access)
30-The success of sports people………other people.
(employs – cycles – inspires – apologises)
31-The manager hasn't replied to the…..I have made.
(complain – complaint – research – experiment)
32-You are mistaken. You have to………..
(continue – request – apologise – sign off)
33-I carried a 170-……..
(weight – weigh – heavy – Spina bifida)
34-How can we put an end to the…….among countries in the Middle East?
(lighting – sighting – fighting – fishing)
35-The……of the picture on our television isn't very good.
(equality – quality – equal – equally)
36-She………the competition three months ago.
(won – took – played – achieved)

TRANSLATIONS CORNER

1)Translate into Arabic:

1-The issue of education reform is a very serious issue that faces our society as scientific research is one of the pillars of national security.

……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………

reform أصلاح/يصلح	issue قضية	face يواجه	pillars ركائز

2-Reclamation of the desert is the only hope to achieve balance and face unemployment.

……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………

Reclamation استصلاح	hope أمل/يأمل	balance توازن	unemployment البطالة

3-Legal immigration is every citizen's right but illegal immigration exposes them.

……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………

Legal شرعى	illegal غير شرعى	immigration هجرة	expose يعرض

4-We have to deepen in the souls of our sons the feeling of belonging to their country.			
…………………………………………………………………………….. ……………………………………………………………………………..			
deepen يعمق	Souls نفوس	feeling شعور	belonging الانتماء

5-Egypt is rich in fascinating nature, wonderful weather, beautiful scenery and great heritage.				
…………………………………………………………………………….. ……………………………………………………………………………..				
rich غنى	fascinating رائع	nature طبيعة	Scenery منظر	heritage تراث

Translate into English:

1-السلام هو حلم كل الدول المحبة للسلام. و نتمنى ان يحل الحب و التعاون يحل محل الحروب و النزاعات والكراهية.			
…………………………………………………………………………….. ……………………………………………………………………………..			
hatred الكراهية	**disputes** النزاعات	**Peace-loving nations** الدول المحبة للسلام	**Peace** السلام

Reading Comprehension Corner

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are many periods in a person's life. Each period has its pleasures and pains and the happiest person is the one who enjoys what each period gives him without wasting his time in useless things. Childhood is a time when a child depends on parents who offer him everything he needs such as food, clothes and money. During this period there are few responsibilities. A child finds pleasure in playing in the rain or snow. But a child has pains since he is not free to do what he wishes and he is always told what to do or to be punished for what he has done wrong. When a young man starts to earn his own living, he becomes free from the discipline of school and parents and accepts responsibilities. However, if he works hard, he can have the great happiness of seeing himself make sustainable progress in his job to build up for himself his own position in society. Wisdom and the ability to help other people come with the old age. Old people can enjoy seeing their children doing great things

in life. Also, they may feel the happiness of having passed their life safely. At the same time **they** may suffer from loneliness and illness.

Choose the correct answer:

1- There are……….periods of life mentioned in the passage.

a) two **b) three** **c) four** **d) five**

2- The underlined word **they** refers to:

a) children **b) young people** **c) grandchildren** **d) old people**

3- A child is not free to do what he **wishes** . The synonym of **wishes** is……………..

a) desires **b) dislikes** **c) hates** **d) refuses**

4- Young people are usually……………….. .

a) lazy **b) wise** **c) hardworking** **d) inactive**

Answer the following questions:

5- Which period, do you think, has more responsibilities? Give two examples for these responsibilities.

…………………………………………………………………………………..

……………………………………………………………………………………..

6- Parents have a great role in a child life. Illustrate in two sentences.

……………………………………………………………………………………..

………………………………………………………………………………………

7- Do you think the young can achieve progress in their societies? How?

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In a small village, there lived a little girl whose name was Sophia. Her uncle gave her a few of pennies to share with her twin brother John in their fifth birthday. She looked at the pieces and said, "What shall we do with them, Mother?" "You mustn't spend them foolishly." said their mother. The twins ran into the street. They wondered what they should buy. Should they buy candy? They hardly knew how it tasted. Should they buy a toy? If they had been the only children in the family, things might have been different. But there were three boys older than them and two little younger sisters. They hadn't gone far when they met a larger boy who was blowing a flute. "I wish I had that flute," John said. The big boy looked at them and blew it again. Oh, what a pretty sound it made!" Sophia showed the money to the boy. "You may have them if you give us the flute." "All of them?" The boy asked. She looked at her brother then nodded. "Well, it's a deal," said the boy, and he gave the flute to the boy and took the pennies. Little John was very happy. They ran home quickly. "You've paid a dear price for this thing. You might have bought half a dozen of such flutes with the money" said his mother. The twins saw what a mistake they had made. The flute did not please John anymore. He threw it upon the floor and began to cry. "Never mind", said the mother very kindly. You are only very little, and you will learn a great deal as you grow bigger.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-The central idea of this passage can be ……………………

a) The older you grow, the wiser you will be.
b) The more people you meet, the more money you will get.
c) The more money you get, the fewer things you will buy.
d) The more relatives you have, the more money you will earn.

2- .... liked to have the flute.

a) John b) Sophia c) The boy d) The mother

3-Which of the following sentences can be a good paraphrasing for the last paragraph in the passage?

a) The mother calmed down John telling him that they would gain more experience through life situations.
b) The mother threatened John telling him that he had to get her other pennies instead of the lost ones.
c) The mother punished John telling him that they would not have any nice flutes in their life.
d) The mother warned John that he shouldn't buy flutes from boys in the street.

4- How were the twins deceived by the boy?

a) The boy sold them his flute for more than it deserved.
b) They decided to buy a flute to their mother.
c) They had to buy a flute to play with brothers.
d) The mother gave them money to buy a flute.

5- "They hardly knew how it tasted". This sentence shows that the twins ....

a) live in poverty b) didn't like candy
c) had to inform their mother d) preferred to taste it

6- After John's experience of buying the flute, he might learn to ....

a) value things b) stop crying
c) ask his father for money d) waste his money

7- Although the mother advised her children to spend money wisely, she didn't get .... when they didn't.

a) upset b) happy
c) delighted d) satisfied

8- According to the passage, the big boy took the advantage on the children and ....

a) took all their money b) play the flute again
c) gave them the flute for free d) tried to sell the flute

Test (5) based on Unit (11)

***Choose the Two correct answers out of the five options given:**

1-The word "amazing" is synonymous with………..

(ordinary – normal – breathtaking – usual – awesome)

2-The word "difference" is similar in meaning to the word………

(similarity – variation – distinction – stimulation – contest)

***Choose the correct answer:**

3-The play …………….a measure of success.

(defeated – shared – achieved – found)

4-Parents should always……and encourage their students to take part in different activities.

(suspend – suppose – suspect – support)

5-There is a good relationship between our school……..and students.

(cast – crew – staff – team)

6-His injury forced him to……from taking part in the Olympic Games.

(type – retire – train – participate)

7-People are always complaining………the weather.

(to – for – on – about)

8-Students should find a role-model to………them.

(hinder – mean – inspire – lift)

9-The teacher…….activity is appreciated by many people has got the prize for the ideal teacher. **(who – which – whose – whom)**

10-I found the book for…..you looked.

(that – who – which – what)

11-Fady is reading a book………

(lent to him – which I lent it to him – I lent him – that I lent it to him)

12-We know a lot of people…….lives are miserable.

(who – when – where – whose)

13-I scored a goal in yesterday's match, …..made my day.

(which – that – who – whom)

14-We know the novelist……the first prize for his last work.

(that awards – awarding – awarded – who awarded)

15-Egypt is the land………..people of different cultures can live peacefully.

(whose – where – when – which)

16-I bought a machine ……………prints names on badges.

(that – what – who – whosm)

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Coffee, tea and soft drinks usually contain caffeine. Caffeine is also found in chocolate, in medicine for colds and in drugs that keep people awake. In the United States, adults who use products with caffeine get an average of about two hundred eighty milligrams a day. This equals the caffeine in about two large cups of coffee. A report this month in the Journal of the American Dietetic Association says adults drink nearly half the coffee they did fifty years ago. But they still get most of their caffeine from coffee. In general, the more people drink, the more **severe** the effects if they miss a day. Yet a recent report says people who drink as little as one cup of coffee a day can become dependent on caffeine. In fact, it says caffeine withdrawal should be listed as a mental disorder. Researchers identified several common effects, such as headaches and sleepiness. Some people have difficulty thinking. Others get angry easily or become very sad. The researchers found that half the people suffered headaches if **they** did not have caffeine. Thirteen percent had a more serious problem. They were unable to work or do other normal activities. These problems generally resulted twelve to twenty-four hours after stopping caffeine. Ronald Griffiths of Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore, Maryland, led the study. He noted that caffeine is the most commonly used stimulant منشط in the world. A stimulant produces a temporary increase in energy. The good news is that people can free themselves of caffeine dependence. The researchers say people should slowly reduce the amount of caffeine in their diet.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1-Stopping dependence on caffeine happens ---------------.

a) all of a sudden b) fast c) after a year d) slowly

2-A stimulant produces a/an ----------------- increase in energy.

a) impermanent b) lasting c) permanent d) lifelong

3-We understand from the passage that products with caffeine ------------.

a) are healthy b) are expensive c) are unhealthy d) are not easy to get

4-According to the passage, some people's normal activities are usually affected when they:

a) get angry easily b) become very sad

c) get over 200 mg of caffeine a day d) stop having caffeine

5- …………is a substance that makes your body work faster.

a) Caffeine b) A soft drink c) A hot drinks d) chocolate

6-…………………is relating to the mind or involving the process of thinking

a) physical b) mental c) stimulant d) soft

7-The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to…………

a) researchers b) people who have caffeine

c) headaches d) problems

8-The antonum of the underlined word "severe" is………..

a) acute b) extreme c) mild d) kind

9-People shouldn't ………….the amount of caffeine in their diet.

a) reduce b) decrease c) increase d) ease

10-The good news is that people can…………caffeine dependence.

a) get rid of b) addict to c) get accustomed to d) expand

Translate the following into Arabic:

Sport is an important part of today's society and plays a large role in people's lives. Sports events always dominate headlines and athletes have become national heroes.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

Translate the following into English :

تساعد الرياضة على التحكم فى الوزن فقد أشارات الآبحاث الى أن الانتظام فى ممارسة الرياضة يقلل من خطر الاصابة بالعديد من الامراض و بالتالى يجعل الحياة أكثر سعادة.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

Write a biography of about 150 words on the following topic:

A famous sports person

12 Hard work Part 1 Lesson 1/2

weave (**wove/woven**)	ينسج	strange (adj.)	غريب
weaver	صانع نسيج	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
weaving	صناعة النسيج	machine	آلة
hard (adj.) (adv.)	صعب / بجد	machinery	الميكنة (الالات)
hardly (adv.)	بالكاد	thin	نحيف
appear	يظهر	coins	عملات معدنية
appearance	ظهور	farmer	فلاح
disappear	يختفى	fisherman	صياد
disappearance	اختفاء	mean	يقصد / يعنى
steal (**stole** / **stolen**)	يسرق	**at** night	ليلا
stealing	سرقة	still	مازال
guilt	ذنب	understand	يفهم
guilty **of**	مذنب بشأن	lose	يفقد / يخسر
alone	بمفرده	really	حقا / فعلا
lonely	وحيدا / يشعر بالغزلة	instead **of**	بدلا من
empty	فارغ / يفرغ	crazy	متحير / مجنون
engaged (**to**)	مشغول / مخطوب ل	happen	يحدث
married (**to**)	متزوج من	earlier	فيما مضى
marry	يتزوج	early	مبكر / مبكرا
single	أعزب	countryside	الريف
take care **of**	يعتنى ب	century	قرن
care **about**	يهتم ب	pale	شاحب
hide **from**	يختفى من	village	قرية
mystery	لغز	villager	قروى
mysterious	غامض	trust	يثق / ثقة
solve	يحل	compared **to**	بالمقارنة ب
solution	حل	special	خاص
angry	غاضب	skill	مهارة
anger	غضب	clever	ماهر
friendly	ودود	return **to**	يعود الى
local people	ناس محليين	come **from**	يأتى من
join **in**	ينضم الى	remember	يتذكر
look **for**	يبحث عن	remind	يذكر
earn money	يكسب نقود	new **to**	جديد ل
husband	زوج	think **about**	يفكر بشأن
sit **down**	يجلس	life (**lives**)	حياة
customer	زبون	person	شخص
late **for**	متأخر على	personal	شخصى
live **in**	يعيش فى	personality	شخصية

Part 2 Lesson 2 Vocabulary

cottage	كوخ / بيت ريفى	danger	خطر
parents	الوالدين	dangerous	خطير
fireplace	مدفأة	efficient	كفء
have an accident	يتعرض لحادث	efficiently	بكفاءة
decide **to**	يقرر ان	operate	يشغل / يجرى عملية
hungry	جائع	operation	تشغيل/عملية جراحية
hunger	جوع	Artificial intelligence	ذكاء اصطناعى
call	يتصل / يسمى / ينادى	change	تغيير / يغير
surprise	مفاجأة	changing	متغير
surprised	مندهش	do work	يقوم بعمل
surprising	مدهش	part **of**	جزء من
important **to**	مهم ل	continue	يستمر
importance	اهمية	happen **to**	يحدث ل
realise	يدرك	good **at**	جيد فى
recognize	يتعرف على	good **for**	مفيد ل
daughter	ابنة	good **to**	طيب مع
wife	زوجة	agree **with**	يوافق / يتفق مع
angry **with**	غاضب من (شخص)	agree **to**	يوافق أن+ (المصدر)
gold	ذهب / ذهبى	(be) filled **with**	مملوء ب
golden	ذهبى	full **of**	مملوء ب
offer	عرض / يعرض	feel like	يشعر و كأنه
however	و مع ذلك	drive **across**	يقود عبر
prove	يثبت	a lonely man	انسان وحيد
proof	اثبات / دليل	difficult	صعب
pleasant	سار	difficulty	صعوبة
unpleasant	غير سار	work	يعمل/عمل/مكان العمل
forget	ينسى	different	مختلف
happily	بسعادة	different	اختلاف
hundred	مائة	manual labour	العمالة اليدوية
ordinary	عادى	bring **back to**	يرجع الى
With the help **of**	بمساعدة	feel confused	يشعر بالحيرة
do practice	يتمرن	find happiness	يجد السعادة
tell a story	يحكى قصة	make notes	يدون ملاحظات

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	synonym	antonym
prove	confirm	disprove
special	particular	general
surprised	astonished	unsurprised

surprising	astonishing	unsurprising
unpleasant	nasty / undesirable	pleasant
disappear	**vanish / end / fade / dissolve / pass away**	**appear / remain / advance / come back / survive**
earlier	former / previous	later
guilty	convicted / criminal / regretful / blameworthy	guiltless / right / innocent / sinless
mystery	puzzle / riddle / secrecy / ambiguity	renown / fact / clear
solve	clear up / explain / work out / resolve	confuse / fail / hide
engaged	busy / involved / in use /occupied	available / free / uninvolved
thin	slim / small	fat
pale	faint	dark
empty	blank / unfilled / vacant	filled / full

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1	*only a few + اسم جمع *only a little + اسم لا يعد	1-There are **only a few** students in the class. 2-There is **only a little** cheese in the fridge.
2	*decide to + المصدر *decide on + اسم *decide that + جملة	*I have **decided to** revise well before exams. *I have **decided on** my goals in life. *I have **decided that** I am going to travel abroad.
3	*agree to + المصدر يوافق *agree to + اسم يوافق ان *agree on يوافق على شئ على *agree with يتفق مع شخص/فكرة *agree that + جملة	1-I **agree with** his analysis of the situation. 2-I **agree that** the proposal was a good one. 3-Are we all **agreed on /about** this? 4-She **agreed to** let me go early. 5-Do you **agree to** their proposal?
4	*effect تأثير(have effects on) *affect يؤثر على *impact تأثير / يؤثر	*Smoking **affects / impacts on / influences** our health. *Smoking has a bad **effect / impact / influence on** our health.

	*influence يؤثر / تأثير	
5	*hard (adj) جاد/صعب/قاسى *hard (adv) بجد / بشدة *hardly (adv) بالكاد / قلما	1-Diamonds are the **hardest** mineral. 2-It is a **hard** question. I can't answer it. 3-I **hardly** speak any French.
6	*ago منذ وقت معين و حتى الان *earlier منذ مدة معينة و حتى وقت معين فى الماضى	1-I travelled to Cairo two years **ago**. 2-Last Sunday, I found the book I lost two weeks **earlier**.
7	*alone (adj) وحيد(لا تأتى قبل اسم) *alone (adv) بمفرده *solo (adj) (adv) وحيد / بمفرده *lonely (adj) منعزل / شاعر بالوحدة	1-I felt so **alone** after my parents died. 2-He sings **solo**. 3-He lives **alone** and often feels **lonely**.
8	*guilt (at/about / over) حزى/عار *guilty (at /about / over) شاعر بالخزى *guilt ذنب /خطيئة *guilty of مذنب *guilty-ridden يتملكه شعور بالذنب	1-I had a feeling of **guilt** about not looking after my ill grandfather. 2-He was **guilty** of robbing the bank. 3-He is **guilty**-ridden. He is responsible for the accident.
9	*mystery=detective story *mystery (n) لغز *mystery (adj) غامض / غير مفهوم *mysterious (adj) غامض	1-I like reading **mysteries** (detective stories) 2-The crime is still a **mystery**. 3-I don't trust that **mystery** man. 4-I don't trust that **mysterious** man.
10	*steal يسرق شىء *rob يسرق مكان *rob شخص of شيء يسرق	1-The thieves **stole** all her jewellery. 2-The thieves **robbed** the bank yesterday. 3-The thieves **robbed** him of his wallet.

Reading Text

Silas Marner

Silas Marner is a weaver who lives in the village of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very friendly to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives alone. Fifteen years earlier, Silas had been engaged to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was taking care of a friend who was sick, a bag of money disappeared from under the friend's bed. A man called William Dane finds the empty bag and Silas's friends decide that he is guilty of stealing the money. Later, William marries Sarah instead, and Silas decides to move to the village of Raveloe. The only thing he cares about is his work as a weaver. All Silas wants to do is work as hard as he can to earn as much money as he can. The richest man in Raveloe, Squire Cass, has two sons: Dunstan and Godfrey. The two sons have their own problems which they hide from their father and they always want to have more money. One night, a bag of gold is stolen from Silas's house and the whole village joins in to look for it. The local people feel sorry for him and are more friendly to him. Silas is angry and wants to solve the mystery.

Use these words to complete the definitions

(disappear / guilty / mystery / solve / engaged / weaver)

1- A .... is something unknown.

2- A .... person did something bad.

3- To .... something is to find the answer.

4- A .... is a person who makes cloth.

5- To .... is to become impossible to find.

6- To be .... is to be in a relationship to get married.

Complete the sentences with the words from.

(disappeared / mystery / guilty / engaged / solve / weaver)

1- Have you heard that Sara and Rami got ....?

2- I don't know what happened to my watch. It is a ....

3- The lady is very sad, her little child has .... in the park.

4- It was a very difficult maths problem, but we managed to .... it.

5- We know the man is .... because we saw him take the money.

6- This carpet was made by a ....

Read the description answer the questions.

The story of Silas Marner begins in the English countryside in the early years of the nineteenth century. There were only a few weavers in the countryside, and they usually looked pale and thin compared to the people who worked in the fields. These people didn't trust anyone who was clever and they didn't like anyone who had seen the world outside their small village. Weavers had a special skill and they usually came from large towns, so they often lived lonely lives.

1- Where did the story of Silas Marner begin?

....

2- Were there many weavers in the countryside?

....

3- Did weavers live a happy life? How?

....

4- What did weavers usually look like?

....

5- Do you think the villagers were right to avoid people who had a different job?

....

Reading Text

One evening, Silas returns to his cottage and finds a small girl sleeping near the fireplace. The girl is cold and hungry. Silas thinks something must have happened to her parents. They might have had an accident. He decides to look after her. He calls her Eppie. The other people in the village are surprised, but they think that Silas can't be a bad person because he wants to look after the girl. They also help him. Silas is now happier. He realises that his new daughter is more important to him than gold. When Eppie is eighteen, Silas's gold is found and returned to him. It was Dunstan who

took the money all those years ago because he did not want to ask his father for money. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be angry with him. He and his wife offer to look after Eppie. However, Eppie wants to stay with Silas. Silas decides to return to his old village with Eppie. He wants to prove that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier. When he arrives, he finds that everything has changed and he can't find anyone that he used to know. Silas feels that he can now forget about this unpleasant part of his history and he returns happily to Raveloe.

Video Script

One hundred and sixty years ago, hard work would have looked very different for an ordinary person. Manual labour could be very difficult; the machinery was often heavy and dangerous to operate, and working conditions were not good. Today, hard work can look very different. We are able to work more efficiently with the help of modern machinery and technology. Modern workplaces are even using Artificial Intelligence, so that computers can do much more work for us. The workplace is changing, and technology will continue to be part of the workplace of the future. The question is: are we still working hard or are computers doing all the work for us?

Exercises on Lesson 1

Choose the correct answer:

1-This medicine won't make the pain ……completely, but it will help.

(appear – disappear – advance – develop)

2-The police could…..the mystery of the crime with difficulty.

(solve – pull – call – clean)

3-Because I live in a remote……. My car is very important to me.

(solution – village – villager – weaver)

4-He was………of murder in my neighbourhood.

(mystery – empty – guilty – lonely)

5-Before you can drive………., you need to have a licence.

(lonely – loneliness – leanly – alone)

6-Rania and Magdi have just got…………

(announced – engaged – connected – played)

7-There was a great………..who made a lot of baskets and cloth for our village.

(weaver – professor – farmer – doctor)

8-We were searching for the sailors who had…….in the storm.

(appeared – disappeared – showed – advanced)

9-If he is found……he will face 2 years in jail as a punishment.

(guilty – faultless – innocent – right)

10-The book tries to explain some of the………of life.

(mysteries – maths – mates – matches)

11-…………means something that is not understood or known about.

(Fact – Mystery – Truth – Show)

12-……….means when you find a solution or an answer to a problem or a question.

(Dissolve – Melt – Fade – Solve)

13-………means not containing any things or people.

(Empty – Occupied – Complete – Full)

14-Shall I take the…bottles for recycling, please?

(full – empty – occupied – complete)

15-The synonym of the word "engaged" is …………

(available – free –involved – uninvolved)

16-The synonym of the word "mystery" is…………….

(known – puzzle – clear – fact)

17-The antonym of the word "disappear" is………….

(fade – dissolve – end – appear)

18-The antonym of the word "guilty" is………

(proud – innocent – criminal – busy)

19-The police are trying to……the mystery of the crime.

(have – solve – take – do)

20-I don't know why she………..sad.

(breaks – makes – tells – looks)

21-My sister got ……to a successful engineer.

(killed – engaged – abandon – abandoned)

22-You should………..care of your appearance when you have an interview.

(get – do – make – take)

23-She looks………her old parents.

(after – forward – up – to)

24-The gang stole a lot of money……….the bank.

(for – with – to – from)

25-Some important papers have disappeared…the safe.

(from – of – for – at)

26-He is a ……… worker at a famous factory.

(hard – hardly – harden – difficulty)

27-He……..wastes any time. He does his best to achieve his ambitions.

(hard – hardly – harden – difficulty)

28-My father works………to earn his living.

(hard – hardly – harden – difficulty)

29-My grandmother lives…after my grandfather died.

(a lone – lone – alone – lonely)

30-My grandmother became a ……….woman with no one to look after her.

(a lone – lone – alone – lonely)

31-My father looked…after his team lost the match.

(anger – angry – angrily – hungrily)

32-The coach looked………at the careless goalkeeper.

(anger – angry – hungry – angrily)

33-All my cousins………in to help me prepare for my wedding.

(joined – lied – forgot – recommended)

34-I don't like town life. I prefer living in …..which is quieter and more peaceful.

(city – the city – country – the country)

35-I think it is not easy to…this problem.

(solve – solution – disappear – disappearance)

36-I think it is not easy to find a …….to this problem.

(solve – solution – disappear – disappearance)

37-The crime is still……..and the criminal is still unknown.

(mysterious – mystery – guilt – guilty)

38-The crime is still a……..and the criminal is still unknown.

(mysterious – mystery – guilt – guilty)

39-We all agree that most people who live in ……..are simple and kind.

(weave – weaver – villages – villagers)

40-We all agree that most ……..are simple and kind.

(weave – weaver – villages – villagers)

Exercise on Lesson 2

1-My husband has decided …….blue for the colour of the living room.

(on – that – to – for)

2-Fady met only………friends before going to school yesterday.

(few – a few – little – a little)

3-The gang…..the bank and took all the money last month.

(stole – tied – robbed – missed)

4-A thief………my wallet yesterday.

(stole – tied – robbed – missed)

5-The bookshop……me the chance to buy Naguib Mahfouz's novels at half price.

(offers – proves – improves – realises)

6-I live in a small village…….. Al Zahraa near El Minya City.

(pulled – called – filled – drilled)

7-It was my dream to have a little……in the countryside to live in.

(prison – hospital – cottage – company)

8-It was very cold, so we sat in front of the……..until late in the evening.

(fire engine – fire alarm – fireplace – fire blanket)

9-She admitted……..the money from her new employers.

(giving – knowing – robbing – stealing)

10-Can you….that you were at home at the time of the attack?

(prove – approve – improve – remove)

11-My brother had such a/an…….experience at the zoo that he refused to go there again.

(attractive – nice – pleasant – unpleasant)

12-We were….to hear such an intelligent question coming from a very small child.

(surprise – surprised – surprising – obvious)

13-……..Intelligence means the study of how to make computers do intelligent things that people can do, such as think and make decisions.

(Normal – Artificial – Man made - Natural)

14-Many women do hard…….labour which means they work with their hands.

(manual – automatic – machine made – computerized)

15-Don't worry, everyone will be shown how to…….the new machines.

(cooperate – operate – coordinate – compare)

16-I need someone dependable to…..the children while I'm at work.

(look for – look up – look in – look after)

17-The prime minister may decide………an early election.

(calling – to call – called – call)

18-She's already……..a plan about how to spend the prize money.

(done – made – played – performed)

19-I agree………..what you have said.

(at – to – by – from)

20-In answer….your question, Ramadan Sobhy Will not achieve his ambitions in Pyramids.

(of – with – to – about)

21-He didn't go to prison because his lawyer……that he was innocent.

(refused – denied – proved – disapproved)

22-I feel……….. I can't tell you what to do.

(confuse – confused – confusing – confusion)

23-I ……..my son Adam because it was the name of father.

(called – told – adopted – abandoned)

24-Ramy is ………….child.

(alone – lonely – a lonely – an alone)

25-Farmers usually live in…………

(a city - a town – the capital – the country)

Deduction الاستنتاج

الاستنتاج يعنى الاستنباط من خلال دليل قوى أو ضعيف فى الحاضر أو الماضى و يتلخص الاستنتاج فى الآتى:-

must + inf	أكيد	ماضى ⟶	**must have + p.p**
can't + inf	لا يمكن	⟶	**can't / couldn't have + p.p**

الفارق بين كلمة must , can't هو المعنى مثل :-

- He gets up early he (must -can't) be active " **must** "
- He plays well, he (must -can't) have trained badly. " **can't** "
- My father (must -can't) have walked to work this morning his car is still in the garage ." **must** "
- Ali wasn't at the meeting, he (must -can't) have read my e-mail to come. " **can't** "

- You (must -can't) have finished that book already, you have just bought it yesterday and it's long. " **can't** "

و كذلك المعنى يلعب دورا بالنسبة للمضارع و الماضي

- Ali is absent today he must (**be** – have been) ill.
- Ali was absent yesterday he must (be – **have been**) ill.
- Dr. Mazen is a good professor, he must (be – **have been**) a good student .
- I can't find my keys, Aml must (take – **have taken**) them .
- I can't find my wallet, it must (take – have taken – **have been taken**) by a thief .

هناك كلمات تعطى الإشارة لـ *must* مثل:

Sure , certain , definitely

☺He must be a doctor = I'm sure he is a doctor.
☸He must have gone = I'm certain he went

هناك كلمات للإشارة لـ can't

Sure , certain , definitely + نفى / impossible

- **He can't have passed the exam** = It's impossible that he passed the exam.
- It ……… windy last night there are broken trees.

a) must be b) **must have been** c) can't be d) can't have been

- Surely, they must (use – used – **have used**) many slaves to dig the suez canal.
- He is an honest man, he ……… stolen it.

a) should have b) **can't have** c) must have d) might have

- Ali ……… forgotten the date, he's get a very good memory.

a) might have b) must have c) **can't have** d) can't be

may, might , could + inf ماضي may, could , might have + p.p

و تعنى احتمال أو شك فى حدوث الشيئ .

It's possible , it's probable , I'm less certain, I'm not sure, perhaps - I doubt it.

- He (must – **might**) have rung. I'm not sure .
- She may (**go** – have gone) to Alex. I doubt that he will do .

May , could + inf احتمال بنسبة 50٪ Might have + p.p احتمال بنسبة 30٪

عندما نجد haven't decided yet / don't think so يفضل استخدام might المثبتة او may not المنفية

- He (may – **might** – could) join the faculty of pharmacy, he hasn't decided yet.
- He (**may** – might – must) have played, I'm not sure .

Could have + p.p = may / might have + p.p احتمال
Could have + p.p كان من الممكن أن يفعل و لكن لم يفعل

- He travelled by train but he (must – **could** – may) have travelled by plane .

Should + inf يجب should have + p.p كان يجب
Should not + inf لا يجب shouldn't have + p.p لم يكن يجب و لكنه فعل

- Nour is late for school she ……… have stayed up late last night .

a) mustn't b) can't c) **shouldn't**

ملاحظات خفيفة للطلبة الظريفة

1-:لا يوجد شيى فى اللغة الانجليزية اسمة Mustn't have +p.p
لا يوجد شيى فى اللغة الانجليزية Can have +p.p

- You **mustn't** have finished that book already (**can't**)
- He **can** have run yesterday (**might**)

2- أحيانا يمكن أن تعبر الجملة عن الاستمرار وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم

- must / can't / may/ might / could+ be + v.ing

- What is Ali doing in his room? - I'm not sure. He may be studying.

- must / can't / may/ might / could+ have been + v.ing

- What was Linda doing? - She must have been working on her computer.

- Should / ought to يجـب أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال لإعطاء النصائح

- In summer, tourists **should wear** a hat and **ought not to sit** in the sun.
- You should take a rest. = It is a good idea to take a rest.

should have / ought to have + p.p. كان يجب أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعـــال عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لعدم قيامه بعمل معين كان يفترض القيام به

Should not have / ought not (to) have + p.p. كان لا يجب أن

ought not (to) have + p.p to يمكن الاستغناء عن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعـــال عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لقيامه بعمل معين كان يفترض عدم القيام به

- You **shouldn't have arrived** late for your exam.
- I'm sorry! I **ought to have come** on time.

Practice on Grammar

***Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- You ………to take an underground train.
a-ought b-must c-should d-can't

2- It ………..been very nice travelling in a tunnel full of steam.
a-must b-can't c-ought have d-can't have

3- The underground really must………travelling around Cairo easier.
a-have been made b-have made c-will make d-made

4- Travelling…….cheaper in the past.
a-might be b-must be c- might not be d-might have been

5- There………six metro lines when the project is finished.
a-can't have been b-must have been c-might not be d-might have been

6- Ali …………travelled to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed.
a-can't have b-must have c-might have d-may have

7- Mona forgot that we have a test tomorrow. She ………..started revising last week.
a-should b-must have c-should have d-should be

8- it……be expensive travelling around London. Bus and underground tickets cost a lot of money.
a-must b-might c-must have d-should have

9- Hassan thinks that he did very well in the exam. He………….get the best results in the class!
a-might b-must have c-should have d-can't

10- Look, it's raining! I …………..have brought an umbrella.
a-ought b-must c-ought to d-ought

11- There……….a sandstorm. The streets are covered in sand.
a-can't have been b-might have been c-ought to be d-must have been

12- She………………lost her mobile phone. She called me from a friend's phone.
a-must have b-might not have c-can't have d-must have been

13- Ali……….forgotten. he's got a very good memory.
a-must have b-can't have c-should have d-might have

14- It ……………..very windy during the night. There are branches all over the ground.
a-must have been   b-shoudn't have been   c-can't have been   d-might not have been
15- I'm sorry! I ……………come on time.
a-ought have   b-should be   c-ought to have   d-should have been
16- In summer, tourists should wear a hat and………………….sit in the sun.
a-can't have   b-ought not to   c-shouldn't to   d-might not to
17- I can't find my book. I …………..it at home.
a-must leave   b-can't be left c-should leave   d-might have left
18- The tourist…………..American because he has an English guidebook.
a-must be   b-can't have   c-might have   d-might have be
19- They……….lunch. their food is in the fridge.
a-can't have had   b-might have had c-must have had   d-should have had
20- It…………cold there. There is snow on the ground in the photo.
a-can't have been   b-should have   c-might not have been   d-must have been
21- Nadia lived in England for 20 years, so she ……….English well
a-must speak   b-can't speak   c-can't have spoken   d-shouldn't speak
22- Ali …………happy. He has just won a gold medal.
a-can't be   b-should have been   c-must be   d-might not be
23- A: I don't know where my school bag is , mum. B:It's not here. You …………left it on the train
a-might have   b-can't have   c-should have   d-might not have
24- I'm certain he hadn't phoned. He ……… have phoned.
a) must   b) shouldn't   c) can't   d) might
25- She …….. have been at the supermarket this morning. I didn't see her there.
a) must   b) can't   c) shouldn't   d) needn't
26- You ……… have been waiting long. After all I'm only five minutes late.
a) must   b) shouldn't   c) can't   d) may
27- You ……… have left your bags here. I'm sure you didn't.
a) may   b) should   c) must   d) can't

EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR

2)Choose the correct answer:

1-He is sorry he's late. He………….. come on time.
(ought to have – shouldn't– may not – better)
2-She ……….. arrived late for her exam.
(ought to have - shouldn't have – should – ought to)
3-In summer, tourists should wear a hat and ……… to sit in the sun.
(ought not – must – can't – could not)
4-We didn't see Ali at the sports club today. He ………… there.
(might be – must have been - might not have been – could be)
5-I can't find my book and I'm not sure where it is. I ………….. it at home.
(mustn't leave – might leave – must leave – can't leave)
6-My cousin ……….. not return today. I'm not sure.
(must – can't - might – will)
7-The tourist …………. American because he has an English guidebook.
(might be – might not be – may not be – can't be)
8-They ……………… lunch. Their food is in the fridge.
(must have had – might have had – should have had - can't have had)

9-It ……………. cold there. There is snow on the ground in the photo.

(may have been - must have been – can't have been – may not be)

10-I …………….. cold. I amn't wearing a jacket.

(can't be – mustn't be – shouldn't be – must have been)

11-Fady ………….. be happy. He has just won a gold medal.

(must – can't – shouldn't – may not)

12-I left a note for my mother saying that I would be home at 6 o'clock. She rang me at half past five and asked me why I wasn't home. She …………my note.

(must read – can't read – must have read – can't have read)

13-He never does any work, but he's always at the top of his class. He …. be very clever.

(must - can't – shouldn't – wouldn't)

14-Mona took her driving test yesterday. Now she's looking very happy. She … her test.

(must have passed – must pass – can't pass – can't have passed)

15My uncle…….have known about your illness. Nobody has told him.

(mustn't – can't – does not – must)

16-He ………… missed his train. He's usually late.

(must have – can't have – didn't have – can have)

17-His watch ………….. cost a lot of money. It's made of plastic.

(must have – might have – could have – can't have)

18-It …been very windy during the night. There are branches all over the ground.

(can't have – will have – must have – didn't have)

19-My father …………walked to work this morning. His car is still in the garage.

(didn't have – won't have – shall have – must have)

20-He can't walk. He …………… be ill.

(must – mustn't – shouldn't – won't)

3)Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali is not on this train . He .... caught a later train. We can wait for him.
a) might have **b) can have** **c needn't have** **d) ought to**
2. Zeinab.................. very surprised when she won the art competition. She didn't think her painting was very good.
a) must be **b) can't be** **c) might be** **d) must have been**
3. There is a lot of traffic on the roads today, so we........................ late.
a) must have been **b) can't be** **c) might be** **d) ought to be**
4. Sami is feeling ill. I think he..................... to see a doctor.
a) should **b) ought** **c) must** **d) can**
5. The football players look very sad. They ....won the match.
a) can't have **b) could have** **c) must have** **d) might not**
6. The thieves .... in through the window. Look – it's still open.
a) must have come **b) must come** **c) can't have come** **d) may come**
7. The thieves .... by car but we can't be sure.
a) must escape **b) can't have escaped** **c) should have escaped** **d) might have escaped**
8. Mona forgot that we have a test tomorrow. She.............. have started revising last week.
a) must **b) should** **c) will** **d) shouldn't**
9. He .... be in class. I saw him at the library a minute ago.
a) shouldn't **b) may** **c) can't** **d) must**

10. Huda was very upset with you yesterday. You.......... apologised for saying she was lazy.
a) should have **b) can have** **c) must have** **d) mustn't have**
11. John has forgotton about the meeting. We.................. reminded him about it yesterday.
a) must have **b) shouldn't have** **c) can have** **d) should have**
12. I'm really cold! I .... my coat.
a) should bring **b) should have brought** **c) must have brought** **d) may have brought**
13. I .... bread but I didn't know we needed it.
a) could bring **b) could have bought** **c) must have bought** **d) shouldn't bring**
14. We ....so many people to our party! I'm worried that we won't have enough room for everyone.
a) could invite **b) should have invited** **c) shouldn't have invited** **d) may have invited**
15. Lucy.................... earlier. She missed her flight.
a) must leave **b) mustn't have left** **c) should leave** **d) should have left**
16. I left my bicycle in front of the library and it's disappeared. Someone................ have stolen it.
a) shouldn't **b) should** **c) must** **d) can't**
17. I .... so much chocolate! I feel sick!
a) should eat **b) shouldn't have eaten** **c) couldn't have eaten** **d) will have eaten**
18. Lamiaa................. the exam if she'd studied a bit more.
a) could pass **b) can't have passed** **c) must pass** **d) could have passed**
19. You.................... rude to him. He's going to be really angry now.
a) can't be **b) should have been** **c) shouldn't have been** **d) can't have been**
20. She called me from a friend's phone. She ………..…. lost her mobile phone.
a) can't have **b) must have** **c) shouldn't have** **d) mustn't have**
21. You..................... this job. I can see you're not enjoying it.
a) shouldn't take **b) shouldn't have taken** **c) mustn't have taken** **d) could have taken**
22. The race was really difficult. She .... because she's not fit enough.
a) must win **b) must have won** **c) couldn't have won** **d) could have won**
23. Our neighbours............... cut down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.
a) must have **b) could have** **c) shouldn't have** **d) can't have**
24. Andrew .... have gone to Cambridge University, but he decided to travel instead.
a) could **b) can't** **c) must** **d) shouldn't**
25. You .... have bought some milk at the shops. We don't have any milk.
a) may **b) will** **c) should** **d) can't**
26. I'm sorry but Samar isn't here. She.................. already left the office.
a) should **b) could** **c) can't** **d) must have**
27. You..................tried to fix the roof yourself. You could have fallen off and been badly injured.
a) must have **b) mustn't have** **c) should have** **d) oughtn't have**
28. He......known it was your birthday. Otherwise, I'm sure he would have wished you a happy day.
a) must have **b) can't have** **c) shouldn't have** **d) mustn't have**
29. She doesn't answer the phone. She..................be out
a) won't **b) can't** **c) should** **d) must**
30. It......be expensive travelling around London. Bus and underground tickets cost a lot of money.
a) ought **b) must** **c) might** **d) can't**
31. She .... be in love with him. She told me she hated him very much.
a) must **b) should** **c) may** **d) can't**
32. There ……........…. been a sandstorm. The streets are covered in sand.
a) must have **b) could have** **c) shouldn't have** **d) can't have**
33. He................. be at the gym right now. Sometimes he goes there at this time.
a) must **b) can't** **c) should** **d) won't**
34. I thought I saw John in town this morning but it ....been him – he's in Greece this week.
a) can't have **b) could have** **c) shouldn't have** **d) must have**
35. He................... have a job interview today - he's waiting to hear from the company.
a) mustn't **b) can't** **c) won't** **d) may**

Part 2 Lesson 3-4 Vocabulary

pace	وتيرة / سرعة	die	يموت
pacemaker	جهاز تنظيم ضربات القلب	dead	ميت
The pace of reform	و تيرة الاصلاح	deadly	مميت / قاتل
plot	حبكة الرواية / حقل/ مؤامرة	death	موت / حالة وفاة
surprises	مفاجأت	describe	يصف
wonderful	رائع	description	وصف
character	شخصية	archaeology	علم الاثار
recommend	يوصى	archaeologist	عالم اثار
recommendation	توصية	pharaoh	فرعون
adopt	يتبنى	lie (**lied – lied**)	يكذب
adapt	يتكيف مع	lie (**lay – lain**)	يقع / يستلقى / يكمن
page-turner	كتاب شيق	east coast	ساحل شرقى
theme	موضوع كتاب /قصة	believe	يعتقد / يصدق
community	مجتمع محلى	belief	اعتقاد / ايمان
belong **to**	يخص/ينتمى الى	unbelievable	لا يصدق
event	حدث	pirate	قراصنة
abandon	يترك / يهجر	treasure	كنز
abandoned	مهجور	deep	عميق
warehouse	مستودع	deepen	يعمق
share **with**	يشارك مع / نصيب	depth	العمق
equally	بمساواة	monster	وحش
equality	مساواة	distant	بعيد
equal	يساوى/متساوى	distance	مسافة
close	قريب / يغلق	unusual	غير عادى
divide **into**	يقسم	check	يفحص / يتحقق
ensure	يؤكد	crime	جريمة
tradition	تقليد	criminal	مجرم / اجرامى
traditional	تقليدى	explain	يشرح
funny	مضحك / مسلى	legend	اسطورة
drive **across**	يقود عبر	puzzle	لغز
for a holiday	من اجل اجازة	puzzled	متحير
on a holiday	فى اجازة	stones	احجار
return….**to**	يعود / يرجع....الى	twist	يلوى
bear (**borne/born**)	يتحمل / يلد	**BCE**=**before common Era**	قبل الميلاد
laugh	يضحك	go wrong	يخطىء

laughter	ضحك	in the north of	فى شمال
bury	يدفن	know about	يعرف عن

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	synonym	antonym
useless	hopeless / fruitless / vain / worthless	effective / fruitful / helpful / valuable / profitable
abandoned	deserted	populated/inhabited
happiness	satisfaction / contentment / fulfilment / pleasure / delight	unhappiness / sadness / gloom / displeasure
funny	amusing / entertaining / comic	boring / dull / tedious
close	Nearby / near	Distant / far / remote
equally	evenly	Unequally
deep	Rooted / buried	Shallow / superficial
unusual	extraordinary	Ordinary
traditional	conventional	unusual

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1	*coast ساحل *shore شاطىء البحر (البحيرة) *beach شاطئ رملى على بحر *bank ضفة النهر او القناة	1-Alexandria lies on the north coast of Egypt. 2-We saw some boats on the shore of the sea. 3-I sat on the beach and built a sand castle. 4-Trees grow along the bank of rivers.
2	*pace سرعة السير / خطوة / وتيرة *the pace of change سرعة التغيير *at your own pace بالسرعة المناسبة لك *pacemaker منظم ضربات القلب *peacemaker صانع سلام	1-Walk ten paces and turn left. 2-The pace of change is getting faster. 3-The doctor said that I needed a pacemaker. 4-President El Sadat was a peacemaker. 5-The soldiers' pace was very fast.
3	*plot الحبكة / قطعة ارض *plot مؤامرة *plot against / to + inf. يتآمر ضد / لكى	1-The plot of the story was exciting. 2-My grandfather has a small vegetable plot. 3-There was a plot against the company to make it fail. 4-They plotted against their manager.

Listening Text

Boy: This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the mountains. The theme is how life in a village is changing in the modern world. The pace is very slow and it is quite sad because many traditional parts of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.

Girl: This book is very funny! It is about a family who drive across the country for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that go wrong! The car is stopped by a bear, and they meet a lot of

strange people. My favourite character is a police officer who is not very good at his job! I laughed a lot and would recommend this book.

Reading Text

Ismail

I had to read Silas Marner when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much then. However, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more. It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The pace was quite fast and the plot is full of surprises. I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to happen to these wonderful characters. I would recommend this book to anyone who enjoys mystery stories.

Nadia

This is a very interesting story of a sad and lonely man who finds happiness when he adopts a girl. It isn't a page-turner, but I liked the way Eliot used the theme of community. She shows us how some people, like Silas, can feel like they don't belong to their community but events can bring them back into it. However, I think the novel is too long. The story of Silas Marner might have worked better as a short story rather than a novel.

What happened to the gold?

Last week, three people, John, Jake and Jane, found gold in an abandoned warehouse. They agreed to share it equally. Jane found some boxes and put all the gold in one. John checked to see if anyone else was close. John and Jake took it to a house to divide it. Jane went to ensure they had bags for the gold. When she arrived, she opened the box, but it was full of stones and all the gold was gone. What happened to the gold?

Workbook Texts

Complete these book reviews with the correct words:

(main / characters / theme / plot / pace)

This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the mountains. The **1** .... is how life in a village is changing in the modern world. The **2** .... is very slow and it is quite sad because many traditional parts of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.
This book is very funny! It is about a family who drive across the country for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The **3** .... is full of things that go wrong! The car is stopped by a bear, and they meet a lot of strange people. My favourite **4** ....is a police officer who is not very good at his job! I laughed a lot and would recommend this book.

Cleopatra VII

Cleopatra VII died in around 30 BCE. The famous writer, Plutarch, described the beautiful place where she was buried. However, although archaeologists have found much older pharaohs, nobody knows where Cleopatra lies today. In 2010, a famous archaeologist called Zahi Hawass found many things from Cleopatra's time at Taposiris Magna, near Alexandria, but he did not find Cleopatra.

Oak Island

Oak Island is on the east coast of Canada. People believe that a pirate called Captain William Kidd stole some treasure and buried it on the island in the seventeenth

century. He wanted to go back to the island to get his treasure, but he never returned. Since that time, hundreds of people have tried to find the treasure, without success.

Loch Ness

Loch Ness is a very deep lake in the north of Scotland. Since the seventh century, people have seen a large, strange animal that lives in the deep water of the lake. They call it the Loch Ness Monster. Some people have even taken photos of a distant shape that could be the monster. However, scientists have studied the lake and they have not found anything unusual. But people still believe that something lives in the lake.

Part 2 Lesson (3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer:

1-To……..the law or the rules is not allowed.

(break – make – tell – look)

2-The photos you have………are great.

(broken – solved – taken – done)

3-Which of the following is a synonym of the verb “abandon” ?

(join – desert – vanish – survive)

4-Something……..wrong with my car and it suddenly stopped.

(went – did – had – felt)

5-She agreed to………I had said.

(where – when – who – what)

6-We spent the………day on the beach.

(all – whole –each – every)

7-I saw the boys……….in the street yesterday.

(plays – playing – to playing – to play)

8-The boys were seen…in the street yesterday.

(play – to play – to playing – plays)

9-In modern life, the……..of change is very fast.

(pace – warehouse – community – pacemaker)

10-The………of this film is boring, but the music is fantastic.

(director – actor – plot – name)

11-You won’t be able to put such a…….down until you have finished it.

(pacemaker – weaver – villager - page-turner)

12-The story has a good……. It is the value of cooperation and teamwork.

(theme – village – solution – shape)

13-I …….my village and moved to Cairo.

(adopted – adapted – abandoned – called)

14-We can buy the amount of goods I need at this……….

(workhouse – farmhouse – warehouse – fashion house)

15-Weavers are good at…..wool together to make cloth.

(solving – disappearing – adopting – twisting)

16-Parents do everything they can to…..that their children get good education.

(ensure – adopt – abandon – weave)

17-I thought he lived…….to his family, but actually he moved to a faraway town.

(far – distant – close – remote)

18-Some Indians do not …the dead. They burn them instead.

(pace – engage – bury – earn)

19-"As long as you follow instructions, you will be safe." "As long as" means……

(a long time – although – despite – if)

20-The people of this area decided to……..it years ago.

(abandon – dessert – confuse – engage)

21-People no longer live in that……area.

(confused – surprised – abandoned – guilty)

22-By ten o'clock the…..was already crowded with people.

(coast – beach – sea – lake)

23-My brother……..the idea of building a new villa in Sharm El-Sheikh.

(adapted – adopted – took – came)

24-I spent my holiday in a town which…..halfway between New York and Florida.

(lies – lays – places – localises)

25-It took me a while to…..to the new job.

(adore – adopt – adapt – limit)

26-Bravery is traditionally part of the Arab……….

(pace – theme – plot – character)

27-The word "……." means a book that is very exciting.

(page-follower / page-burner / page-turner / page-corner)

28-I tried to solve the….., but I gave up as it was too difficult.

(confusion – puzzle – amaze – tale)

29-A……..is a large building for storing large quantities of goods.

(workhouse – farmhouse – warehouse – sports house)

30-The teacher…..the class into four groups to solve the maths problem.

(divided – explained – parted – found)

31-The officer…….our passports before we boarded the plane.

(looked – checked – pulled – researched)

32-When his ship sank, he was able to reach a / an……island. There is no one to talk to.

(habited – inhabited – abandoned – assisted)

33-The ancient Egyptian history is full of…..like Isis and Osiris.

(crimes – goals – legends – efforts)

34-The abbreviation "…" is short for "Before Common Era".

(BEC – BCE – CEB – BCR)

35-I …….this book to anyone with an interest in chemistry.

(advise – invite – recommend – comment)

36-Many people now call for a return to…..values which young people neglect.

(new – gradual – traditional – regular)

37-How on earth can you say that? Do you have no…..values?

(moral – evil – sinful – corrupt)

38-You can…….a room with your friend.

(shake – share – shave – show)

39-I don't have any worries…….leaving the children with my mother.

(about – in – at – on)

40-Something must be done to reduce the level of……in the area.

(criminal – crime – virtual – virtue)

TRANSLATIONS CORNER

1)Translate into Arabic:

To protect our surrounding environment and keep it clean, we should collect rubbish in bins and take it away to its place.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

surrounding محيطة	collect يجمع	rubbish قمامة	bins سلات قمامة

2-Optimism is very important in everyone's life as it makes our life interesting and hopeful one. You must be optimistic about your future life.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

Optimism تفاؤل	hopeful ملىء بالامل	optimistic متفائل	future مستقبل

3-Many young people are interested in reading detective stories in which they find the excitement to know and solve the puzzle of any crime in a way that is not thought of any one.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

excitement اثارة	interested مهتم ب	detective بوليسية	puzzle لغز

4-The government does its best to improve the infrastructure of many slums.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

government حكومة	slums احياء	infrastructure بنية تحتية	does its best تبذل قصارى جهدها

Translate into English:

1-بفضل وسائل الاعلام و الاقمار الصناعية اصبح العالم قرية صغيرة. من السهل التواصل مع اى شخص فى اى دولة.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

communicate يتواصل	**mass media الاعلام**	**satellites الاقمار الصناعية**	**Thanks to بفضل**

Reading Comprehension Corner

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is often said in guidebooks that Egypt is the gift of the Nile. The Ancient Egyptians certainly must have believed this. Where else did their food come from except the rich black mud brought by the river during the annual floods? How could they transport their huge blocks of stone and their enormous statues? On the flood water of the Nile. However, since the river is now controlled in Egypt by the High Dam at Aswan, there is no longer a flood every year as there used to be in the past. There are some people who see the High Dam as a mixed blessing. One disadvantage is that the Nile no longer brings the mineral-rich mud which used to feed the soil. By the year 2025, Egypt will suffer from shortage of water. As the population grows, so more people will need water for drinking, washing, etc. At the same time, more water will also be needed to irrigate land in the desert to provide a suitable environment for the growing population. So what can be done? Water can be re-cycled, that is to say, some waste water can be purified and re-used. Engineers can also search for more water underground. However, the Nile will always remain the major source of water for the country. Yet, the river upon which Egypt relies begins thousands of kilometres to the south, and is shared by other countries in Africa. Both Egypt and Sudan receive water from sources in Ethiopia, Kenya, Uganda, Zaire, Ruanda and Burundi. What would happen if **these** decided they needed more water from the Nile? The answer is co-operation. Agriculture in Egypt depends almost entirely on irrigation, as there is hardly any rain. This is not true of some of the other Nile states, such as Uganda. Dams could therefore be built in these countries to provide water storage for Egypt at the same time, to provide a source of energy. Efforts could also be made to reduce the large loss of water. These are issues which will concern all the countries of the Nile in the next century in order to ensure that there is enough water for everyone.

Choose the correct answer:

1- By the year 2025, Egypt will suffer from .... of water.

a) lack **b) increase** **c) growth** **d) rise**

2- Other Nile basin countries depend on .... agriculture

a) water of the Nile **b) rain water** **c) wells** **d) recycled water**

3- Nile basin countries are .... in number.

a) seven **b) eight** **c) six** **d) four**

4- .... protects Egypt from floods.

a) irrigation **b) Black mud** **c) The high dam** **d) recycling**

5- The underlined word " **these** " refers to..............

a) Engineers **b) Floods** **c) Nile states** **d) shortage of water**

Answer the following questions:

6- Explain what you think the phrase 'mixed blessing' means.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

7- Do you think The High Dam has brought only good things? Why / Why not?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

7- Why was the Nile important to the Ancient Egyptians? (two reasons)

Part 2 Chapter 7 Treasure Island

fort	حصن	towards	تجاه
inside	بالداخل	fence	سور
outside	بالخارج	hill	تل
pirates	قراصنة	wait **for**	ينتظر ل
flag	علم	honest	أمين
clever	ماهر	honesty	الامانة
frightened **of**	خائف من	safely	بأمان
except	ماعدا	safe	أمن
gun fire	نيران بنادق	save	يحفظ / ينقذ
hide (**hid/hidden**)	يختبىء	map	خريطة
nearly	تقريبا	perhaps	ربما
blow (**blew**)	تهب الرياح	offer	عرض / يعرض
sand	رمال	loud	عالى
fire	نار / مدفأة	loudly	بصوت عالى
warm	دافىء	supplies	مؤن
full **of**	مملوء ب	accept	يقبل
smoke	يدخن / دخان	chains	سلاسل
cough	يكح / كحة	trial	محاكمة
look **for**	يبحث عن	problem	مشكلة
firewood	حطب	sail	يبحر / شراع
guard	يحرس / حارس	fight (**fought**)	يقاتل / مشاجرة
crazy	مجنون / متحير	end	ينهى / نهاية
voice	صوت بشرى	attack	يهجم / هجوم
sound	صوت شىء/يبدو	advantage	ميزة
truce	هدنة	disadvantage	عيب
mist	ضباب	win (**won**)	يفوز
trick	خدعة / يخدع	bring (**brought**)	يحضر
play a trick **on**	يقوم بخدعة على	come **up**	يقترب
corner	ركن / ناصية	keep busy	يبقى مشغولا
crew	طاقم سفينة	get home	يعود لوطنه
call **out**	ينادى على	become ill	يصبح مريضا

Jim Hawkins: I walked with Ben Gun and we soon saw the fort. “Your friends will be inside, Jim,” said Ben. “It might be the pirates,” I replied. “No, look at the flag! They will be good men,” he answered. “The fort was made by Flint. He was a clever

man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver." "Let's go inside," I said. "I can't go in there," Gun replied. "I don't trust anyone. I'll wait for you. Remember what I told you. I can help you. Come and find me tomorrow." Before I could go to the fort, there was the sound of more gun fire and I had to hide so I wouldn't be hit. From the trees where I waited, I could now see the Hispaniola. It was also flying a flag, but it was the black pirate's flag. When it was nearly dark, I walked round to the back of the fort and called out. The door opened, and Dr Livesy let me inside. I sat down and told them my story. The wind blew sand inside the fort and we found it everywhere, in our clothes, in our food and in our eyes. There was a fire to keep us warm, but the room was also full of smoke and we all coughed. Captain Smollett gave us all jobs: some looked for firewood, others went to cook food, and I was asked to guard the door. He kept us all busy, and that made us all feel better. "Captain Smollett is a good man," said Dr Livesy later that day. "And what about Ben Gun? Is he a good man?" "I don't know," I answered. "I think he's a little crazy." "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy," explained the doctor. "Did you say that he wanted some good food?" "Yes," I replied. "I've brought some cheese with me on this journey. Let's give it to Ben Gun!" said the doctor. That evening, the men talked about how little food we had. We hoped that the pirates would leave the island with the Hispaniola. The doctor said that they would become ill if they slept outside on the island for long. And if the pirates left, we could wait until help arrived. I slept very well that night. The next morning, a voice woke me up. I heard someone say, "Some pirates are coming to the fort with a white flag. Look, it's Silver! He wants a truce!" I got up and looked from the fort. It was a cold morning, and although it was sunny, there was a low mist. We could only see the head of Silver and another pirate. "Stay in the fort," said Captain Smollett. "I'm sure that this is a trick." Then he called out to Silver, "Tell us what you want." "I want a truce," said Silver. Captain Smollett quietly told us to move to different corners of the fort and to watch Silver carefully. Then he called to Silver, "What do you want us to do?" "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home," said Silver. "Your ship? I didn't know you had a ship here," replied Captain Smollett. "Well, the crew chose me to be their captain after you left the ship," said Silver. "If you have something to say, you can come into the fort and say it," said Captain Smollett. The other pirate tried to stop Silver, but he laughed and walked quickly towards the fort. He climbed over one of the fences and walked slowly up the hill. Soon he was standing in front of Captain Smollett, who was waiting for him outside the door to the fort. "Can't I come inside?" asked Silver. "It's a cold morning." "If you were an honest man, you could come inside," said Captain Smollett. "But are you my ship's cook, who I looked after, or Captain Silver, a pirate?" "OK, we can stay

here," said Silver, sitting down on the sand. "You've got a nice place here. Look, there's Jim! Good morning." "If you have anything to say, say it now," said Captain Smollett. "Captain, we want the treasure, and we're going to find it. However, I think you all want to leave the island safely. You have the map, don't you?" asked Silver. "Perhaps," said Captain Smollett . "I know you have it," said Silver. "We don't want to hurt you. Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship. We'll take you somewhere safe. Or, if you prefer, we'll leave you some supplies and you can stay on the island. Then we can ask another ship to come and take you home. It's a kind offer, and I hope you all want to take it." He said this last part loudly, so that we could all hear in the fort. "Is that all you can offer?" said Captain Smollett. "It is, and if you don't accept my offer, all you will hear from me is the sound of guns!" "Now you can listen to me," replied Captain Smollett. "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in chains and take you back to England for trial. If you don't, you'll have problems. You can't find the treasure. You don't have enough men to sail the ship, and you can't fight us here in the fort." Silver looked very angry. "This will not end well for any of you," he said, and then he walked slowly back down the hill. Captain Smollett came back into the fort and said to us, "He'll be back in an hour to attack us. There are more of them than us, but we have the advantage inside the fort, and I am sure that we can win".

Exercises

1) Complete the sentences with these words from the story:

chain offer mist advantage trial tricks truce honest

1. You can trust him. He is a / an .... man.
2. A / An......................... stopped the war for a short time.
3. We often see .... in the morning, and we can't see the ground.
4. My little brother likes to play .... on me.
5. Thank you for your kind ....
6. Gamal put a big .... around his bike when he went into the shop.
7. After the ...., the criminal went to prison.
8. What are the .... of travelling by train?

2) Complete the sentences with these adjectives:

busy clever crazy honest frightened safe

1. Ben Gun thought that Flint was a .... man.
2. Flint was not .... of anyone except for Silver.
3. Captain Smollett kept all the men .... inside the fort.
4. Jim thought that Ben Gun was a little ....
5. Captain Smollett does not think that Silver is an .... man.
6. Silver offers to take Captain Smollett and his men to somewhere ....

Exercise on Chapter 7

Choose the correct answer:

1-The soldiers will……..the control tower, the large fuel tanks at certain times.

(stand – grade – guard – qualify)

2-A group of…..attacked the ship.

(waiters – pirates – writers – surgeons)

3-Very good control using a wire……is essential for any kind of utilisation.

(pavement – wall – hill – fence)

4-The offer my father had………was rejected.

(gone – done – made – become)

5-……..is like a low cloud which makes it difficult to see very far.

(Mist – Fight – Fire – Light)

6-I think my team is going to………because the players play better.

(chain – guard – hide – win)

7-The ………proved that he was guilty. He was sent to prison for 10 years.

(try – tries – trial – truce)

8-We usually put a……..on a gate to protect a building against theft.

(fort – flag – chain – firewood)

9-We collected more……to keep ourselves warm.

(truces – chains – fire wood – pirates)

10-We usually find……….on the beach or in the desert.

(guns – chains – sand – flags)

11-My brother is a/an……man who always tells the truth..

(dishonest – honest – disloyal – cruel)

12-My sister has a very bad cold. She also has a………..

(laugh – cough – enough – tough)

13-To be able to live in a remote deserted place, I must have enough….of food and water. **(offers – treasure – firewood – supplies)**

14-No one of the enemy could break into the…..in which our soldiers were hiding. It was strong and well built. **(pyramid – font – flat – fort)**

15-The energy form has a/an….over liquid fuel is that it is a safe product.

(advantage – disadvantage – demerit – downside)

16-He used various………to deceive his employees.

(trucks – tracks – tricks – rocks)

17-It was difficult to drive my car through the………in the early morning.

(mass – mess – miss – mist)

18-My friend is.....He decides to swim in the sea in winter.

(busy –kind –crazy – smart)

Chapter 8 Treasure Island

weapon	سلاح	thick	سميك / كثيف
fort	قلعة	decide **to**	يقرر ان
in trouble	فى متاعب	wait **for**	ينتظر الى
north	شمال	terrible end	نهاية فظيعة
south	جنوب	dream **of**	يحلم ب
east	شرق	cliff	منحدر
west	غرب	impossible	مستحيل
fire a gun	يطلق النار	completely	تماما
fire **at**	يطلق النار على	lay **down in**	يستلقى
attack	يهاجم / هجوم	**on** its own	بمفرده
fence	سور	paddle	مجداف / يجدف
in front **of**	أمام	coast	ساحل البحر
sword	سيف	waves	أمواج
At the same time	فى نفس الوقت	cry	يبكى / صرخة
weak	ضعيف	mist	ضباب
weakly	بضعف	rock	صخرة
fight (**fought**)	يحارب/يواجه	skin	جلد
win (**won**)	يفوز	rope	حبل
get better	يتحسن	anchor	مرساة السفينة
crazy	مجنون/متحير	darkness	ظلام
plan	يخطط / خطة	steer	يوجه / يقود

Chapter 8 Text

Jim Hawkins: We prepared our weapons and the captain told us what to do. "Doctor, you stay by the door. Hunter, stay at the east of the fort. Joyce can stand at the west. Gray and Trelawney will stay at the north. If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we're in trouble." After an hour, Joyce said that he saw someone coming. We all looked and listened, and we got our weapons ready. Suddenly, Joyce fired his gun. Then, we heard guns firing at us from all sides of the fort. There was a lot of noise and smoke, but nobody was hurt. Then everything went quiet again. "Did you hit anyone?" the captain asked Joyce. "I don't think so," he replied. "How many people fired on your side, Doctor?" asked Captain Smollett. "There were three," he replied. "How many on your side, Trelawney?" Trelawney and Gray were not sure. They thought seven, eight or nine. There was only one shot fired from the east and west. So, we knew that the pirates wanted to attack mostly from the north. But Captain Smollett told us to stay where we were. We didn't have much time to talk. A group of pirates ran from the trees towards the north of the fort, and their guns started firing again. Some of the pirates tried to climb the fence,

but Joyce shot two of them and one ran back to the trees. However, four were now inside the fences and seven more continued to fire at us from the trees. Our men fired at the four pirates, but did not hit them. They were now running up the hill to the fort, and one of them climbed up and took Hunter's gun. Another ran in through the door, where the doctor killed him. Captain Smollett then told us to go to the other side of the fort. I ran there quickly, and suddenly found one of the pirates, Anderson, in front of me. He was going to attack me with his sword, but Gray saw him and killed him before I was hurt. At the same time, the pirates inside the fences were killed by our guns. I was safe, but others were not. Poor Joyce and Hunter were dead and Captain Smollett was hurt. "Have the pirates gone?" asked Captain Smollett weakly. "Some of them have gone," said Doctor Livesy, "but five of them will never walk again." "That's good," said Captain Smollett. "There are fewer pirates for us to fight. I know that we can win."

The pirates did not return that day, so we had time to eat and look after the people who were hurt. Doctor Livesy said that Captain Smollett would get better, but he should not walk or even talk if he didn't need to. In the early afternoon, Doctor Livesy took his hat and a gun, then he put the map in his pocket and left the fort. "What is he doing?" asked Gray when we saw him walk into the trees. "Is he crazy?" "The doctor has a plan," I said. "I think he's going to visit Ben Gun." That afternoon, I thought about where the doctor was. I remembered how good it felt to walk through the trees and on the beach. It was much nicer than staying inside the hot fort. I decided to take some biscuits and a gun. I wanted to go down to the rocks where Ben Gun said there was a boat. When nobody was looking, I quietly left the fort. I walked quickly towards the east of the island. It was now late afternoon but the sun was still high. As I went nearer to the coast, the wind became stronger and it wasn't as hot. Soon I could see the big waves of the blue sea and then I walked down the beach, feeling happy. At the end of the beach I climbed a hill. I could see the Hispaniola , with the pirate flag flying in the wind. And I could see Silver in one of the small boats, talking to his men. I could not hear what they said, although I could hear the cry of the parrot, Captain Flint. The sun was going down and soon there was a mist. I knew that I needed to be quick and find the boat that evening. It took me a long time to walk to the white rock where Ben Gun said his boat was. It was nearly dark when I finally found it inside a tent made of animal skins. It was badly made from old wood and it was very small, although I thought that it would be very fast on water. Now I had my own plan. I thought that I could go the Hispaniola in the night and cut the rope to the anchor. So, I ate my biscuits while I waited for it to become dark. When I stood up later, there was mist everywhere. I picked up the boat and carried it to the beach. In the darkness, I could just see a fire where the pirates were sleeping in the trees, and another distant light from the Hispaniola . I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship.

I found that the boat was very difficult to steer, but the wind helped me to get to the Hispaniola . Soon, I was next to the big ship and I began cutting the thick anchor rope. I could now hear some of the pirates talking on the ship. One of the men was called Hands, but I did not know the other man. They both seemed angry. The rope finally broke, and I moved away from the ship. As I was leaving, I saw a light in one of the windows where the sailors were talking. I don't know why, but I decided to look into the window. I saw that Hands and the other pirate were fighting each other. I sat down in the boat, but I realised that the wind was taking me quickly out to sea. Now it no longer had the anchor rope, the wind was moving the Hispaniola , too! The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a terrible end, dreaming of my home and the Admiral Benbow . The next thing I knew, it was light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island. The sun was up, but I couldn't see it because of the high cliffs on this side of the island. There were big waves hitting the rocks below, and it would be impossible for me to take the boat to the shore. I remembered that on the map, there was a place called Cape of Woods. This was a place of tall trees and it also had a beach. I would try to get there. The boat sailed well, but when I tried to steer it, the boat hit the waves and I was soon completely wet. I realised, however, that if I lay down in the boat, it found its way through the waves on its own. I used a paddle to steer the boat a little, and it moved very slowly towards the Cape of Woods.

Exercise on Chapter 7

1) Complete the sentences with the correct definition:

(anchor - cry - paddle - rope - steer – thick)

1-……………….is a short pole used to move a small boat along

2-……………….is very big, strong string.

3- ……………….is a loud sound made by an animal or bird d wide (for an object)

4-……………….is to control the direction of a car, boat etc.

5-……………….is a heavy object used to stop a boat moving

2-Complete the sentences with these words.

anchor cry noise paddle rope steer thick

1-The city is never quiet; there is always the .... of cars and people.

2-When we got near the beach, we could hear the . .. .of sea birds.

3-That is a very . .. . book. It will take a long time to read it!

4-Be careful when you . ...around the corner because the road is very wet.

5-There was no wind to sail the boat, so we used a small . . ..to move us along.

6-The children used a . ... to climb up and over the wall.

7-I knew that the ship was stopping when I heard them drop the .. ..into the water.

3-Choose the correct answer:

1-We sailed into the bay and dropped…….in five fathoms وحدة لقياس العمق of water.
(anchor – drogue – button – fastener)

2-I managed to…..the discussion away from the subject of money.
(reach – link – aim – steer)

3-The boat was never designed to…….on such rough seas.
(sail – swim – drive – fly)

4-Our house is encircled by a high………..
(chimney – gate – fence – cave)

5-It was difficult for us to move such a large boat with one……….
(paddle – fence – weapon – fort)

6-It is easy for a sailor to…….a small boat.
(swim – steer – drown – cry)

7-The thieves used a …..to climb up and over the wall.
(rope – fence – mist – anchor)

8-The criminal tried to……..his gun at the poor woman.
(do – put – fire – make)

9-All countries of the world are suffering from the mass destructive……..
(swords – missions – weapons – treasure)

10-The police weren't able to catch the thieves, but they managed to….one of them.
(shout – shot – shoot – sail)

11-The ship…….in the harbour and the crew went ashore.
(sailed – parked – shouted – anchored)

12-I can't visit my uncle very often because he lives in a ………village.
(distance – near – close – distant)

13-If you don't follow my advice, you will be in…….
(problem – trouble – advance – fire)

14-A crocodile has……skin that makes it difficult for other animals to bite.
(thin – thick – sick – small)

15-To move my small boat through water, I use a/an………
(pedal – paddle – anchor – weapon)

16-My brother likes watching the…….roll in and break on the shore.
(waves – weaves – sand – wind)

17-We are busy……..for our exams.
(sleeping – preparing – shooting – crying)

18-Knives, swords and guns are lethal قاتل / مميت……
(clothes – paddles – weapons – skins)

Chapter 9 Treasure Island

paddle	يجدف / مجداف	pain	الم / يؤلم
waves	أمواج	painful	مؤلم
close **to**	قريب من	painfully	بألم
deck	ظهر السفينة	pick **up**	يلتقط
empty	فارغ	weapon	سلاح
blow (**blew**)	تهب	hurt	يؤلم / يؤذى
fight (**fought**)	يتشاجر / قتال	shore	شاطئ
cupboard	دولاب	wreck	حطام سفينة
look **for**	يبحث عن	flat	مستو / مسطح / شقة
wound	جرح	steer	يوجه / يقود
go **back**	يعود	wet	مبلل
bandage	ضمادة	angry **at**	غاضب من شئ
put **on**	يضع / يرتدى	angry **with**	غاضب من شخص
look better	يبدو أفضل	surprise	دهشة/مفاجأة
coast	ساحل	surprised **at**	مندهش من
rock	صخرة	run **away from**	يهرب
rocky	صخرى	catch	يمسك
anchor	مرساة / يرسو	mast	سارية / عمود
go downstairs	يذهب لاسفل	laugh	يضحك
make noise	يصنع ضوضاء	shoulder	كتف
take **off**	يخلع / تقلع الطائرة	shallow	ضحل / منخفض

Chapter 9 Text

Jim Hawkins: It was very hot and I was thirsty. The trees were near now, but before I could feel happy, I saw the Hispaniola sailing around. I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me. I watched the Hispaniola and saw that it went east, then west, then stopped. Then it did the same again and again. Nobody was sailing it! But where were the men? I thought if I could get onto the ship, I could return it to Captain Smollett. I started to paddle the boat, sometimes hitting waves, but slowly getting closer to the ship. As I got nearer, I saw nobody on the ship. It was so close that I could almost touch it. Suddenly, the wind changed and the ship was almost on top of me. I held onto a rope at the side of the ship just before it hit my little boat, which went under the waves. So, I found myself on the Hispaniola , with no other boat to save me.
I climbed up onto the deck, which seemed empty. The wind blew and the sails moved to the right, and then I saw them: Hands and the man he was fighting. I thought they were both dead, but then Hands said weakly: “Water!” I went downstairs. The pirates had broken all the cupboard doors when they were looking for the map, and the floor was dirty with sand and mud from the island. I found some water and some food, which I put in my bag, and I went back to give the water to Hands. He drank all of it, very quickly. “Are you hurt?” I asked him. “With a doctor, I’ll be fine,” he said. “And where have you been?” “Well, I’ve decided

to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain," I said. He looked at me angrily, but he also looked very ill. "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," I said, and then I went to take down the black pirate flag.

Hands looked at me, and then said, "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." "That's a good idea," I agreed. "I don't think you can sail this ship," Hands said. "So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I'll help you." "OK," I said, "But I'm not going back to where the ship was before. We're going to the north of the island." "The north?" he asked. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go!" So, I agreed to help him. I found a bandage to put on his wound and I also gave him some food and some more water. He soon looked better. He told me how to sail the ship. It moved quickly along the coast of Treasure Island and soon we could see the rocky north of the island. I felt good. I had water and food. The only thing that worried me was Hands. He looked at me all the time and I knew that he was planning something. We arrived near the north of the island, and Hands told me how to stop the ship without an anchor. Then we sat down to eat.

"Could you go downstairs and get me some more water?" he asked. I did not think for a minute that Hands was an honest man. He wanted me to leave the deck for a reason, but I did not know what this was. However, I also knew that Hands was not a clever man, so I agreed to go. I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship, where I could see him. He was moving slowly and painfully across the deck, where he picked up a knife. He then hid the knife in his jacket and sat down where he was. Now I knew that he could move, that he had a weapon, and that he planned to hurt me. I did not know what he planned to do after that, but I knew that he could not hurt me until the ship stopped in a safe place near the island. I went back downstairs, put on my shoes and returned with a bottle of water. Hands was sitting quietly, and took the bottle without saying thank you. Then he said, "Look, the wind has changed. If we move the ship now, we'll be safe."

We had only two miles to go to the shore. It was difficult to get to the correct place on the coast, but Hands told me what to do. This part of the island was full of trees and we could see the wreck of an old ship lying on a flat beach. "We can stop there, on the beach," said Hands. I steered the ship slowly onto the beach, where it stopped with a low noise. I was so excited to arrive back at the island that I forgot to watch Hands. I suddenly turned round and there he was, standing with a knife in his hand. I cried out and he jumped at me. I moved quickly to one side and he fell on the deck. Before he could stand up again, I took a gun from my jacket. However, the gun was wet from my journey and it did not work. I was very angry with myself. I was surprised at how fast he could move with the wound in his leg. As he ran towards me, I got ready to run away from him again, and he stopped. I remembered a game that I used to play with my friends in Black Hill Cove when one of us would try to catch the other. I was always good at this game and I thought that I could easily run away from this older pirate with a bad leg. At that moment, a wave hit the Hispaniola . When the ship moved, we both fell over and I nearly fell onto Hands. Before he could stand, I decided to climb up the mast of the ship. Up in the sails, I had time to repair my gun and soon it would be ready to fire again.

Hands looked up at me and saw my plan. He, too, started to climb the sails, but he could only climb slowly because of his bad leg. Before he was near me, I had the gun ready. "If you come any closer, Mr Hands, you will be dead!" He stopped and I could see he was

thinking about what he could do. “You’re clever, Jim Hawkins,” he said. “You’ve won.” I started to laugh, thinking I was clever, when suddenly he threw something at me. His knife flew through the air and hit me in the shoulder. I was so surprised that, without knowing how, my gun fired. Hands gave a cry and fell down into the sea. I never saw him again. The knife passed through my shoulder into the wood of the mast, so I could not move. It hurt badly. It took a long time before I could think. When I finally looked at the knife, I saw that it only went through a small piece of skin. It was not difficult to take out. I climbed back to the deck and found a bandage for my wound. I was now alone on the ship and it was nearly dark. I quickly took down all the sails I could reach and then jumped down into the shallow water. I walked onto the sand, leaving the Hispaniola half on the beach and half in the water.

Exercise on Chapter 9

1-Choose the correct word:

1) Baher has grown so tall that he can **catch** / **reach** the top window now.
2) All the tourists stood on the **deck** / **mast** of the ship when they sailed into Alexandria.
3) This table isn’t **flat** / **shallow**, so I can’t do my homework on it.
4) Injy can’t play basketball today because she hurt her **shoulder** / **wreck**.
5) After the accident, we put a **bandage** / **wound** on Hatem’s arm.
6) I tried to **paddle**/**dive** the small boat alone.

2-Complete the sentences with these words.

(bandage /catch /deck / flat / mast / reach / shallow / shoulder / wound / wreck)

1-……..is the tall pole which carries the sails on a ship.
2-……..is to move your hand or arm forward to hold or take something.
3-……..means not deep.
4-……..is a long piece of cloth that you can put around an injury.
5-……..is a ship that is badly damaged and cannot be used again.
6-……..is the part of your body between your arms and your neck.
7-…….to stop someone from escaping.
8-…….is an injury, especially a deep cut from a knife.
9-…….is the top part of a ship where you can walk.
10-……means having a level surface.

2-Complete the sentences with these adjectives.

(correct / dead / dirty / empty / honest / rocky / wet / worried)

1-When Jim returned to the *Hispaniola*, the deck seemed . . . .
2-Jim thought that Hands and the other pirate were . . ..
3-The floor of the ship was . ... with sand and mud from the island.
4-Soon Jim and Hands saw the . ... north of the island.
5-Jim was . . .. because he knew Hands was planning something.
6- Jim knew that Hands was not an .... man.
7-It was difficult to take the ship to the .. .. part of the island.
8-Jim’s gun did not work at first because it was . ...

4-Choose the correct answer:

1-He had a……..on his wounded arm.

(cloth – bandage – sheet – cover)

2-The children have gone………in the sea.

(paddling – sinking – drawing – packing)

3-When I heard the alarm I went up on the………of the ship.

(device – devise – deck – desk)

4-I could see a…..to the right of your arm which was bleeding quite heavily.

(cure – disease – sickness – wound)

5-Nobody wants a mobile phone……put up anywhere near where they live.

(mist – mast – cell – wire)

6-………..means not having much distance between the top or surface and the bottom.

(swallow – shallow – sparrow – shine)

7-Exercise is the only way to get a …….stomach.

(rough – flatten – flat – surface)

8-I think nuclear…should be way down and reduced very substantially.بشكل جوهرى

(wires – guns – weapons – atoms)

9-Huge……..were breaking on the shore.

(groups – wires – weaves – waves)

10-My leg hurts and so I need a………..shoes for walking.

(flat – pump – flute – flown)

11-You must bathe and bandage the………or it will be infected.

(wind – wound – mud – mount)

12-It is very difficult to drive your car on a/an……..road.

(flat – paved – rocky – glassy)

13-There was a………between the two students and one of them was injured.

(light – fight – flight – tight)

14-Prayers should take………their shoes before entering the mosque.

(of – off – down – turns)

15-I asked my brother to go……….to open the house door for his mother.

(up – aside – ahead – downstairs)

16-The restaurant is on the upper………..of the ship.

(thick – pick – deck – check)

17-I managed to get on the train and have a seat as it was almost………

(crowded – empty – occupied – wounded)

18-After the ship had sank, the divers searched the………..

(deck – wreck – trick – wig)

Part 3 Chapter 10 Treasure Island

adventure	مغامرة	angrily	بغضب
At last	أخيرا / فى النهاية	more **of** a man	أكثر رجولة
go **back to**	يعود الى	rules	قوانين
look **forward to**	يتطلع الى	remain	يبقى
fort	قلعة / حصن	Look **after**	يعتنى ب
unusual	غير عادى	leader	قائد
waste	يضيع / يسرف	gang	عصابة
pleased	سعيد / مسرور	somewhere	مكان ما
guard	يحرس / حارس	alive	على قيد الحياة
run **into**	يصطدم ب	now that	بما أن / لآن
trap	فخ / يوقع فى الفخ	kill	يقتل
trapped	محتجز	latest	الاحدث / اخر
bring	يحضر	lose	يفقد
torch	كشاف	realise	يدرك
shoulder	كتف	surprised	مندهش
still	مازال	hold **on**	يتمسك ب
anymore	مرة اخرى / بعد الان	Look **round**	ينظر حوله
weak	ضعيف	ready **for**	جاهز ل
anchor	مرساة	run **away**	يهرب
frightened **of**	خائف من	take **back**	يسترجع
trial	محاكمة	talk together	يتحدث معا

Chapter 10 Text

Jim Hawkins: At last, I was back on the island. The ship was safe from the pirates, ready for our men to go back to sea. I looked forward to telling my friends about my latest adventure and started to walk back across the island. I remembered the map, so I knew how to return to the place where I had met Ben Gun for the first time. As I continued, it was very dark. It was difficult for me to find my way, but the light of the moon helped me. When I was near the fort, I went more slowly. I did not want my friends to think I was a pirate. Suddenly, I saw a red light through trees. What was it? Then I saw that there was a big fire next to the fort. I thought that this was unusual, as Captain Smollett was always very careful not to waste wood for the fire. I quietly went back inside the dark fort, and I was very pleased to hear the men inside talking quietly. However, I realised that they were not good guards because nobody saw me return. I was about to climb into my bed when I heard the words, “Who is it? Who is it?” I realised that it was Captain Flint,

Silver's parrot! Everyone in the room woke up, and I heard someone call out: "Who's there?" It was Long John Silver! I turned to run away but I ran into a man, who held on to me. I was trapped.
"Bring a torch, Dick," said Silver. When he returned with a torch, I could see inside the room. I realised that the fort was now full of pirates. Our food was on the table, too, but I could not see any of my friends. Was it possible that they were all dead? There were five pirates standing in the room. Another pirate lay in bed. He looked badly hurt. Silver looked tired. His parrot was on his shoulder, and his clothes were dirty. "So, Jim Hawkins!" said Silver. "It's nice of you to visit us. You don't have to stand up for Jim!" he told his men and they lay down on their beds again. "I knew you were clever," Silver said to me. "I always wanted you to be one of us, because I was like you when I was a boy. Now, you can't go back to your friends because they think you've left them. So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to join us now." I was pleased to hear that my friends were still alive, but I was not happy to hear that they did not want me anymore. "Now, you don't have to say yes," said Silver. "I can't tell you what to do." "I'll answer you," I said, in a weak voice. "First, I want to know where my friends are." "Yesterday morning," explained Silver, "Dr Livesy came down with a white flag. He told me that the Hispaniola was not there anymore. We looked round and he was right! The ship was gone! Then the doctor said that we could have the fort. I asked him how many of them were in the fort, and he said there were four, and one of them was hurt. And he said he did not know or care where you were. So here we are. I don't know where they are now." "Do I have to decide now?" I asked. "Yes, you have to decide now," said Silver. "Very well. But there are some things you need to know. First, you have lost your ship, you have lost your treasure and you have lost many of your men. How did you lose them? It was me! I heard your plans on the Hispaniola and told Captain Smollett. And I cut the anchor ropes of the ship, and took it to a place that you don't know. I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: if you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?" I stopped talking and all the men looked at me angrily. "That was the boy who knew Black Dog in Bristol!" said one of the pirates called Morgan. "And he was the boy who got the map from Billy Bones!" Morgan then stood up with a knife. "Stop!" called Silver. "Do you think that you're the captain now? You do as I say!"

Morgan and the other pirates were quiet. “I like this boy,” Silver continued. “I’ve never seen a better boy than him. He’s more of a man than any of you.” The other pirates did not look happy and they started to talk quietly to each other. “What are you saying?” said Silver. “We don’t like all of your rules,” said one of the pirates. “We’re going to talk together without you. You can’t stop us.” Soon, all the men left the room, and only Silver and I remained. “Listen Jim,” said Silver. “I don’t think that they want me to be the captain any more. But I can look after you, if you look after me.” “Do you mean that they want to kill you?” “They don’t need me now that I don’t have the ship. But if you save me, I can save you.” I was surprised to hear this. He was the leader of the gang of pirates, and now he wanted the help of a boy.

“I’ll do what I can,” I told him. “You’re a good boy!” he said. “I know you’ve got the ship safe somewhere. I don’t know how you did it, but you did. Remember, I’m now with Mr Trelawney and his men. So, why did the doctor give me the map, Jim?” He saw that I was surprised. “Yes, he gave it to me. He must have a plan, you know. Let’s hope it’s a good one.” I looked out of the fort and saw the pirates talking in a group. One of the men had some paper and a knife and the others were watching him. Then they started to walk back towards us. “They’re coming!” I told Silver. “Let them come!” he said.

Exercise on Chapter 10

1-Complete with the correct definition:

(alive / care / rules / torch / trapped)

1-……….is a stick that you burn at one end for light.

2-…………means living.

3-…………..is to be concerned about or interested in something.

4-…………is to be unable to leave or escape.

5-…………are instructions about what you can and can’t do.

2 Complete these sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1- Many young people today ....a lot about the environment.

2- A runner always carries a ....to mark the start of the Olympic Games.

3- Hazem was hurt in the accident but he was still ....

4- Lamar was .... in the room and she couldn’t get out.

5- The .... say that you can’t talk in the library.

3-Choose the correct answer:

1-The criminals…..silent throughout the trial.

(returned – guarded– remained – lost)

2-I couldn't buy the shirt that I wanted as I realised that I …….my wallet.

(lost – missed – found – stole)

3-As I was driving dangerously fast, I ran…..a tree and was badly injured.

(out of – away – into – over)

4-The bank was broken into by a…..of thieves.

(team – family –flock – gang)

5-I'm very grateful to the man who….my son from drowning.

(suffered – saved – waved – returned)

6-My elder brother is…..of a man than any of those I have ever known.

(many – much – more – most)

7-I can take a rest….I have finished my homework.

(so – while – now that – in order to)

8-I like………so I always go to strange places.

(anchor – adventure – gang – leader)

9-My sister looks……my baby brother when my mum is out.

(after – for – up – like)

10-We need a………when it is dark.

(stick – trial – torch – parrot)

11-The terrorists were arrested in a/an…….set by the police.

(trap – anchor – adventure – shoulder)

12-The…….say that you can't talk in the library.

(roles – rules – low – law)

13-Fady let me take the computer on….for a week.

(anchor – adventure – guard – trial)

14-To…..means to be concerned about or interested in something.

(lead – join – care- please)

15- Doctors kept the baby…..for 3 months on the ventilator.

(living – dead – silent – alive)

16-A security……brought him down with a flying tackle.

(board – guard – award – card)

17-The man was on………for killing somebody.

(rail – court – attempt – trial)

18-Better to….silent and be thought a fool that to speak and remove all doubt.

(support – reclaim – remain – remark)

Chapter 11 Treasure Island

nervous	عصبى / متوتر	malaria	مرض الملاريا
nervously	بتوتر / بعصبية	nod	يومئ / ايماءة
forward	للامام	patient	مريض / صبور
torch	كشاف / شعلة	remind	يذكر
trick	خدعة / يخدع	right	حق
follow	يتبع	sound	صوت شيء / يبدو
arrest	يقبض على	trial	محاكمة
come **to** an agreement	يتوصل لاتفاق	trust	يثق / ثقة
		promise	يعد / وعد
negotiate	يتفاوض	useful	مفيد
negotiation	مفاوضات	voice	صوت بشري
show	يعرض / عرض	feel well	يشعر بصحة جيدة
wonder	يتسأل / تعجب/تسأل	keep close	يبقى قريبا
except **for**	ماعدا	sound different	يبدو مختلف
accept	يقبل	try a trick **on**	يجرب خدعة على
stay safe	يبقى أمن	walk **away**	يمشى بعيدا
Be friends **with**	يكون أصدقاء مع	walk **in** through	يمشى من خلال
wake (**woke**)	يستيقظ / يوقظ	**with** wonder	باندهاش
good (n)	الخير	jump	يقفز / قفزة
evil (n)	الشر	save lives	ينقذ حياة

Chapter 11 Text

Jim Hawkins: The pirates walked in through the door. One of the men was holding a piece of paper, and he nervously walked forward to give it to Silver. Silver read it. “So, I’m not the captain now, is that it?” he said. “Can I have the torch for a minute, so I can read it better?” “Don’t try your tricks on us,” said one of the pirates, called George. “I’m still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn’t be,” said Silver. “We can tell you,” said George. “First, your plans haven’t worked. Second, you let Trelawney and his men leave the fort, and we’re sure that they have a plan. Third, you wouldn’t let us follow them. And fourth, there’s the boy!” “Is that all?” asked Silver. “That’s enough, isn’t it?” said George. “I’ll answer each reason,” said Silver. “First, who didn’t do what I asked them to do? Anderson, Hands and you, George! If we are arrested when we return to England, it is because of those people! Second, we have a doctor on the island. He’s important because some of us are very ill at the moment. The doctor and I came to an agreement so that he would help us. And the boy? He’ll be useful if we need to negotiate. And what about reason three? Well, this is why we didn’t follow them!” he continued, and showed them the treasure map. I was very

surprised and I did not understand why the doctor had given the map to him. The pirates, however, looked at it with wonder. “That’s Flint’s map!” said George. “But how are we to take his treasure home if we don’t have a ship?’ “Listen, George,” said Silver. “You lost my boat, but I can find the treasure. So, who should be captain now?” “Silver’s right,” said Morgan, and the other pirates agreed. Silver was still the captain. The pirates now seemed happy, except for George. Silver made him guard the fort all night while the other men laughed and sang. I lay down and thought about Silver. I understood that he was very clever. He knew how to be friends with all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to stay safe.

The next morning, a voice woke us all up (and I mean all of us, even George, the guard). It was Dr Livesy calling us. I was very happy to hear him, but also worried. I had left my friends and now I was with Silver’s gang. What would Dr Livesy think? “Good morning, Doctor,” said Silver. “Come in! George will open the door for you. We’ve got a surprise for you, too!” “Do you mean Jim?” asked Dr Livesy. He looked surprised as he came near us. “That’s right,” said Silver. The doctor did not speak for some time. Then he said, “Let me see your patients.” He walked into the fort and, with a small nod to me, walked up to the ill pirates. He talked to them as if they were any English patient, although he knew they were all dangerous men. “I hope you took your medicine?” he said to George. “Yes, sir, I did,” he replied. “Good, because now I’m a pirate’s doctor, I want to keep you all healthy so we can get you back to England for trial,” he said. The pirates looked at each other but they said nothing. “Dick doesn’t feel well,” said Morgan. “Let me look at you,” the doctor replied. “Yes, you have malaria. That’s what happens when you sleep outside on an island like this. I’m surprised that a clever man like Silver didn’t realise.” He gave Dick some medicine, then said, “Now I’d like to talk to the boy, please.” “No!” said George. “Be quiet!’ shouted Silver. “Doctor, you’ve been kind to help us with our medicine, so you can talk to the boy. But first he must promise not to run away.” I agreed. “Good. Now you can go outside, doctor, and you can talk to the boy through the window. He can stay inside,” said Silver. When the doctor went outside, the other pirates told Silver that they were not happy that the doctor could talk to me. Silver reminded them they did not know where the treasure was yet. They needed my help, and perhaps the doctor’s help as well, until the time was right. Silver took me to a window where I could talk to the doctor. When he knew the pirates could not hear, he spoke to the doctor, but he sounded different. “Tell the others that I helped you, doctor,” he said. “The boy will tell you how I saved him, too. If you help me, you will also help the boy stay safe.” “I think you’re frightened!“ said Dr Livesy. “I’m not frightened,” said Silver, “but I know

you're a good man and you'll see the good in me. Now I'll let you and Jim talk." Silver walked away and sat down, where he could not hear us. "Jim, what happened? Why did you leave us when we needed you?" the doctor asked me. I felt very bad and started to cry. "I'm sorry, doctor! I was wrong. They were going to kill me, but Silver saved me. I must stay here now." "No," said the doctor. "You can't stay here. One jump and you're out of the fort, and we can run." "I can't," I said. "Silver trusts me now. But if they hurt me, I will have to tell them where the ship is. Because I got the ship! It's in the north of the island, half on a beach." "You've got the ship!" said the doctor. I quickly told him my story. "You've saved our lives many times on this journey," said the doctor. He then turned to Silver. "It'll be dangerous to look for that treasure, Silver," he said. "Don't try to find it." "But I can only save my life and the boy's life if I find it," Silver replied. "OK, then keep the boy close to you. If you need help, shout. Goodbye, Jim," he said, and left the fort. "We can look for the treasure now, Jim," said Silver. "You stay close to me. We'll look after each other."

Exercise on Chapter 11

1-Complete with the correct definition:

(agreement / arrest / malaria / negotiate / nod / promise)

1- A/An…………is a movement of your head that gives someone a sign.
2- A/An…………is a serious illness that comes from mosquitos.
3-…………………is to say you will certainly do something.
4-…………………is to discuss a situation to find a good result for everyone.
5-………………means that the police take someone away for doing something bad.
6-…………………is a decision made by two or more people.

2 Complete these sentences with these words

arrested agreement negotiate nod malaria promise

1- The businesswoman travelled to England to .... selling Egyptian cotton to a factory. I hope she gets a good price.
2- We both wanted to go to different places for our holiday, but now we've come to a/an .... We're going to Luxor!
3- I asked my friend if he agreed with my plan for the project, and he gave a small .... of his head.
4- The scientist became ill after staying by a river for a week. He might have ....
5- The police .... the man because he was driving his car at more than 150 km/h.
6- Thank you for letting me use your phone. I ....that I'll give it back to you tomorrow.

3-Complete the sentences with these adjectives.

dangerous frightened happy ill important safe useful

1- The doctor is .... of Silver because some of the pirates are very ....
2- Jim will be .... to Silver if they need to negotiate.
3- Apart from George, all the pirates were ....when they agreed to keep Silver as Captain.
4- Jim knew that Silver would do anything to stay ....

5- Dr Livesy thought that Silver was ...., but Silver said he wasn't.
6- Dr Livesy helped the pirates, although he knew they were ....men.

3-Choose the correct answer:

1-Eating healthy food is very………for our health.
(useless – harmless – useful – helpless)
2-I……..my friend Ali. He is very reliable person.
(disbelieve – rust – trust – disagree)
3-Our shop is open daily………for Fridays.
(accept – expect – except – respect)
4-The film………boring. I turned off TV and went to bed.
(sounded – voice – looked – remembers)
5-I took my friends for a new adventure and decided to walk in…..the forest.
(although – throw – thorough – through)
6-……….is a serious disease that you may get when you have been bitten by a small flying insect that lives in hot countries.
(Cancer – Malaria – Headache – Earache)
7-After a lot of meetings and talks, we finally reach a/an………concerning the new project.
(disagreement – punishment – development – agreement)
8-Egypt doesn't……..with terrorists or the countries that support them.
(negation – negotiate – appreciate – disagree)
9-……….your head if you understand what I am saying.
(Wave – Follow – Nod – Not)
10-Firefighters are responsible for………..lives.
(doing – making – taking – saving)
11-In Magdi Yacoub's Heart Centre, ……….get the best medical treatment in Egypt.
(pirates – athletes – patients – powerlifters)
12-Try to see the………in everyone. No one is completely bad.
(evil – devil - worse – good)
13-The police ………those who break the law.
(trust – negotiate – arrest – promise)
14-Exercise is a great way to…….safe from illness.
(arrest – trust – stay – promise)
15-You have no choice but to……the rules or you will be fired.
(follow – break – neglect – disobey)
16-He is an intelligent employer who knows how to be……..with all the staff.
(manager – friend – enemy – fighter)
17-If you hadn't ……me of the meeting, I'd have forgotten about it.
(remembered – promised – reminded – stayed)

Chapter 12 Treasure Island

worry	قلق / يقلق	hill	تل
worried	قلقان / متوتر	kill	يقتل
trick	يخدع / خدعة	get **into**	يدخل
supplies	مؤن / امدادات	point	يشير
frighten	يخيف / يرعب	skeleton	هيكل عظمى
escape	يهرب	slow **down**	يبطئ / بطئ
crazy	مجنون	smile	يبتسم / ابتسامة
drink	يشرب / مشروب	so that	لكى
destroy	يدمر	sound	يبدو / صوت شئ
destruction	دمار	terrible	فظيع
shout	يصيح / صيحة	thief	لص
blow (**blew/blown**)	تهب	useless	عديم الفائدة
plan	يخطط / خطة	useful	مفيد
hole	فتحة / حفرة	give advantages	يعطى مميزات
spade	جاروف	play a trick **on**	يخدع
dig (**dug**)	يحفر	make a plan	يصنع خطة
attach	يربط / يوصل	think **of** a plan	يفكر فى خطة
before then	قبل ذلك الحين	ground	ارض
cave	كهف	excited	متحمس / مثار
comfortable	مريح	call **out**	ينادى
empty	يفرغ / فارغ	look tired	يبدو متعب

Chapter 12 Text

Jim Hawkins:
Silver went back to the pirates and said, “I’ve found out that the doctor’s men have the ship. I don’t know where it is, but when we find the treasure, we’ll find the ship. That will give us the advantage. We’ll keep Jim with us before then. When we go home, we can leave him on the island.” The pirates looked happy with this news, but it worried me. What was Silver really planning? When he found the treasure, was he going to help Dr Livesey and Mr Trelawney or these terrible pirates? I did not know. We all left the fort. The pirates were carrying supplies, spades and their weapons. We then got into the small boats and looked at the map to see where we should go. We took the boats down a river, then we left them and walked through some tall trees. The pirates attached me to Silver with a rope so that I could not escape, and we walked up a hill. We walked for many hours. It was very hot, but this side of the island was very beautiful, with many flowers and birds. Then we heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face. It was the skeleton of a man lying on the ground.
“The skeleton is pointing north!” said Morgan. “He is,” said Silver. “I think this was one of Flint’s games. He killed the man and put him there.” “Flint was a terrible man,” said Morgan. The pirates looked worried and when we continued, they were much quieter. Suddenly, we heard a voice singing from the trees in front of us. “That sounds like Flint!” said George. “Flint’s dead,” said Silver. “It is someone playing a trick.” Then the voice called out, “McGraw, bring me a drink, please!” “That was what Flint said, just before he died!” said Morgan. Now the pirates all looked very frightened. “Listen men,” said Silver. “There’s

a lot of treasure near here. I don't think that was Flint. I think it was Ben Gun." "I thought he was dead, too, but I'm not frightened of him," said George. The pirates looked happier and continued walking, although Dick looked tired and ill. Soon we saw a very tall tree. The tree was on our map and we knew that we were now close to the treasure. I could see that all the pirates were excited. Silver, too, looked different. His eyes looked crazy and dangerous, and I thought he would do anything to go home safely with the treasure. The pirates all ran to the bottom of the tree. George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry. "Look!" he said. We saw what he was pointing at. Near the bottom of the tree there was a big hole in the ground. Someone had been there before us. The treasure was gone! The pirates said nothing, but I could see that Silver was already making a plan. "Take this, and be ready for trouble," he said quietly, and he gave me a gun. Then the pirates all jumped into the hole and started digging with their spades. Perhaps there was treasure still there. Morgan found a gold coin and held it up for the others to see. "One coin? You told us there was seven hundred thousand pounds here, Silver!" shouted George angrily. "You knew about this, didn't you?" The pirates looked very angry. They climbed out of the other side of the hole, looking dirty and hot. "Let's get them, men!" said George. Suddenly, there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two of the pirates fell down and the other three started to run. We were safe! Dr Livesy, Gray and Ben Gun came out from the trees. "Thank you, doctor," said Silver. "You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!" Ben Gun said hello to Silver, but I could see that he was frightened of him. Lesson

As we walked back to the boats, we heard how Ben Gun had helped us. Ben Gun had dug up the treasure and put it in a cave in the north of the island before we arrived on the Hispaniola. Ben Gun told all of this to Dr Livesy, when the doctor gave him some cheese. The doctor then thought of a plan. He gave the map to Silver because he knew it was useless. Then he took his friends up to the cave, where Ben Gun had supplies as well as the treasure. When he knew that Silver was taking me and the men to look for the treasure, the doctor came back with Ben Gun and Gray. To slow the pirates down, Ben Gun sang a song to frighten them. This had given the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole. After a few hours, we reached the coast again. Ben Gun helped Gray to destroy one of the boats so that the other pirates could not use it. We took the other boat around the island. After three miles, I was surprised to see the Hispaniola ! The wind had blown it from the beach and it was sailing empty on the sea. We helped Gray to get onto the ship so that he could look after it, and we continued to the beach. We then climbed the hill to Ben Gun's cave, where Trelawney was looking after Captain Smollett. "Silver," Trelawney said when he saw him. "You are a pirate and a thief, but the doctor says that you have helped us. I must thank you." Silver said nothing, but he smiled. Inside the big cave, Captain Smollett was lying by a fire. Behind him, I could see lots of coins and gold. It was Flint's treasure. The next morning, we began to take the treasure down the hill to the boat. It was heavy work, and it took us days to move all the coins and gold. We knew there were still three pirates on the island. We looked for them all the time, but we did not see them again. We decided to leave the island without them, but we left some food and medicine. It was a difficult journey back on the Hispaniola because the crew was so small. Captain Smollett lay on his bed and told us what to do. After a few days, we reached a town in South America, where we went to find more people for our crew. When we returned to the Hispaniola later that day, Ben Gun told us that Silver had taken a boat and some money. He was gone, but nobody was sad about that. With a bigger crew, it was easier to return to Bristol. The treasure helped us all back in England. Captain Smollett stopped

working and Gray decided to buy his own ship. Ben Gun quickly spent all of his money. I have a comfortable life now. I often think about the island and Long John Silver, but I never saw him again.

Exercises on Chapter 12

1-Complete the sentences with these words:

attach cave ground point skeleton smile useless

1- This phone is ....! It doesn't work.
2- Plants and trees grow out of the ....
3- I always try to .... and look happy in photos.
4- If you .... your keys to your bag, you won't lose them.
5- Hana couldn't speak, but she could .... to the house where she lived. 6- There were some big bones in the .... of a dinosaur at the museum.
7- The .... was dark but we went inside to get out of the rain.

2 Complete these sentences with the correct definitions

attach ground point smile useless skeleton cave

1-……….. is a large hole in the side of a mountain.
2-……….. is the bones of a whole animal or person.
3-…………is to join one thing to another.
4-…………not useful at all.
5- ……….. is the top part of the earth.
6-…………is to have a happy expression on your face using your mouth.
7-…………move your finger in the direction of something to show it to someone.

3-Complete the sentences with these adjectives:

(beautiful / comfortable / crazy / dangerous / frightened / hot / quieter / terrible / useless / worried)

1- Jim was .... that Silver wanted to leave him on the island.
2- Jim did not know if Silver would help Dr Livesy or the .... pirates.
3- It was .... when they walked across the island, but the flowers were very ....
4- Morgan looked at the skeleton with a .... face.
5- The pirates were much .... after they saw the skeleton.
6- Silver's eyes looked .... and ....when they got near the treasure.
7- Dr Livesy gave the map to Silver because it was ....
8- Back in England, Jim lived a .... life.

4-Choose the correct answer:

1-………means to fasten, join or connect, to place or fix position.
(Attack – Attract – Attend – Attach)
2-He was so thin that you could see his……through his skin.
(skate – skeleton – skill – skull)
3-It's…..to try to convince him that he doesn't need to lose any weight.
(usual – useless – user – usage)
4-Be careful. It's impolite to….at people.

(point – attract – attack – paint)

5-The Nile is the main source of our water………

(supply – reply – clarify – apply)

6-Have you……..out how much the tickets are?

(got – discovered – found – founded)

7-A note was……to the document with a paper clip.

(communicated – attached – attacked – contacted)

8-Children like sitting on the beach and ……..in the sand.

(making – digging – looking – swimming)

9-When it started to rain, we ran to shelter in a/an………..

(cave – safe – save – wave)

10-You must slow……when you drive during the rain on high ways.

(up – down – over – into)

11-The ship sank and all the………..lost their lives.

(staff – clew – crew – crow)

12-Money in general is either in the form of banknotes or ………

(cones – coins – currency – points)

13-I have a nice house…..the river. The view from its windows are amazing.

(in – thorough – over – by)

14-When I see my uncle, he always………..at me and this makes me happy.

(hates – laughs – smiles – smells)

15-Yesterday, there was a / an……accident on the motorway. There were many victims.

(nice – terrible – terrific – wonderful)

16-This tablet doesn't work. It is …………….

(helpful – useful – heavy – useless)

17-You don't have to pay for the……… They are free.

(holes – thieves – supplies – drinks)

18-His strong memory………him an advantage.

(gives – makes – slows – tells)

19-The wind…….dust into the house.

(dug – slowed – blew – destroyed)

20-You needn't speak. Just……to the house where she lived.

(smile – sound – point – attach)

21-The plan they have……is really successful.

(gone – made – done – thought)

22-It's known that plants and trees grow out of the……….

(shout – coin – spade – ground)

23-The fire………..the wooden house last night.

(slowed – destroyed – blew – dug)